



INTERNATIONAL TELECOMMUNICATION UNION

**ITU-T**

TELECOMMUNICATION  
STANDARDIZATION SECTOR  
OF ITU

**T.172**

(02/98)

SERIES T: TERMINALS FOR TELEMATIC SERVICES

---

**MHEG-5 – Support for base-level interactive applications**

ITU-T Recommendation T.172

(Previously CCITT Recommendation)

---

ITU-T T-SERIES RECOMMENDATIONS  
**TERMINALS FOR TELEMATIC SERVICES**



*For further details, please refer to ITU-T List of Recommendations.*

## **ITU-T RECOMMENDATION T.172**

### **MHEG-5 – SUPPORT FOR BASE-LEVEL INTERACTIVE APPLICATIONS**

#### **Summary**

This Recommendation specifies semantics and final-form interchange syntax for MHEG-5 objects, based on concepts defined in Recommendation T.171. These objects are intended for use in the domain of simple client/server interactive multimedia applications, e.g. (Near) Video-on-Demand applications, navigation and browsing applications.

#### **Source**

ITU-T Recommendation T.172 was prepared by ITU-T Study Group 16 (1997-2000) and was approved under the WTSC Resolution No. 1 procedure on the 6th of February 1998.

This Recommendation is technically aligned with the International Standard ISO/IEC 13522-5.

## FOREWORD

ITU (International Telecommunication Union) is the United Nations Specialized Agency in the field of telecommunications. The ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector (ITU-T) is a permanent organ of the ITU. The ITU-T is responsible for studying technical, operating and tariff questions and issuing Recommendations on them with a view to standardizing telecommunications on a worldwide basis.

The World Telecommunication Standardization Conference (WTSC), which meets every four years, establishes the topics for study by the ITU-T Study Groups which, in their turn, produce Recommendations on these topics.

The approval of Recommendations by the Members of the ITU-T is covered by the procedure laid down in WTSC Resolution No. 1.

In some areas of information technology which fall within ITU-T's purview, the necessary standards are prepared on a collaborative basis with ISO and IEC.

## NOTE

In this Recommendation, the expression "Administration" is used for conciseness to indicate both a telecommunication administration and a recognized operating agency.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

The ITU draws attention to the possibility that the practice or implementation of this Recommendation may involve the use of a claimed Intellectual Property Right. The ITU takes no position concerning the evidence, validity or applicability of claimed Intellectual Property Rights, whether asserted by ITU members or others outside of the Recommendation development process.

As of the date of approval of this Recommendation, the ITU had not received notice of intellectual property, protected by patents, which may be required to implement this Recommendation. However, implementors are cautioned that this may not represent the latest information and are therefore strongly urged to consult the TSB patent database.

© ITU 1998

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from the ITU.

# CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
1 Scope.....	1
1.1 Specificity of the scope.....	1
1.2 Issues outside the scope of this Recommendation.....	1
2 Normative references.....	1
3 Terms and definitions.....	2
4 Conformance.....	3
4.1 Conformance of MHEG-5 objects.....	3
4.2 Conformance of MHEG-5 engines.....	4
4.2.1 Conformance to the acceptance of a set of Classes and Elementary Actions.....	4
4.2.2 Conformance to a set of engine functionality.....	4
4.2.3 Additional requirements for conformance specification.....	5
5 Overview of the MHEG-5 classes.....	7
5.1 Root.....	9
5.2 Group.....	9
5.3 Application.....	9
5.4 Scene.....	9
5.5 Ingredient.....	9
5.6 Link.....	10
5.7 Action.....	10
5.8 Program.....	10
5.9 Palette, Font, and CursorShape.....	11
5.10 Variable.....	11
5.11 Presentable.....	11
5.12 TokenGroup.....	12
5.13 ListGroup.....	12
5.14 Stream.....	12
5.15 Audio.....	12
5.16 Interactable.....	13
5.17 Visible.....	13
6 Structure of this Recommendation.....	14
7 Notations.....	14
7.1 Attributes.....	14
7.1.1 Inherited attributes.....	15

	<b>Page</b>
7.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	15
7.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	15
7.2 Events.....	15
7.3 Internal behaviours.....	15
7.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	16
7.5 Formal description .....	16
8 Root Class .....	16
8.1 Attributes .....	16
8.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	16
8.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	16
8.1.3 Own internal MHEG-5 attributes .....	17
8.2 Events.....	17
8.3 Internal behaviours.....	18
8.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	20
8.5 Formal description .....	20
9 Group Class.....	20
9.1 Attributes .....	21
9.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	21
9.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	21
9.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	22
9.2 Events.....	22
9.3 Internal behaviours.....	23
9.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	23
9.5 Formal description .....	24
10 Application Class.....	25
10.1 Attributes .....	25
10.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	25
10.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	25
10.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	28
10.2 Events.....	28
10.3 Internal behaviours.....	29
10.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	29
10.5 Formal description .....	36
11 Scene Class .....	36
11.1 Attributes .....	36

	<b>Page</b>
11.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	36
11.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	37
11.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	38
11.2 Events.....	38
11.3 Internal behaviours.....	39
11.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	39
11.5 Formal description .....	44
12 Ingredient Class .....	44
12.1 Attributes .....	44
12.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	44
12.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	45
12.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	46
12.2 Events.....	47
12.3 Internal behaviours.....	47
12.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	47
12.5 Formal description .....	50
13 Link Class .....	50
13.1 Attributes .....	50
13.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	50
13.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	50
13.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	51
13.2 Events.....	51
13.3 Internal behaviours.....	51
13.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	51
13.5 Formal description .....	52
14 Program Class .....	53
14.1 Attributes .....	53
14.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	53
14.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	53
14.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	53
14.2 Events.....	53
14.3 Internal behaviours.....	54
14.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	54
14.5 Formal description .....	56
15 ResidentProgram Class .....	57

	<b>Page</b>
15.1	Attributes ..... 57
15.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 57
15.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 57
15.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 57
15.2	Events..... 57
15.3	Internal behaviours..... 57
15.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 57
15.5	Formal description ..... 57
16	RemoteProgram Class..... 58
16.1	Attributes ..... 58
16.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 58
16.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 58
16.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 58
16.2	Events..... 58
16.3	Internal behaviours..... 58
16.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 59
16.5	Formal description ..... 59
17	InterchangedProgram Class ..... 59
17.1	Attributes ..... 59
17.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 59
17.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 59
17.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 59
17.2	Events..... 60
17.3	Internal behaviours..... 60
17.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 60
17.5	Formal description ..... 60
18	Palette Class ..... 60
18.1	Attributes ..... 60
18.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 60
18.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 60
18.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 60
18.2	Events..... 60
18.3	Internal behaviours..... 60
18.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 61
18.5	Formal description ..... 61

	<b>Page</b>
19	Font Class ..... 61
19.1	Attributes ..... 61
19.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 61
19.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 61
19.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 61
19.2	Events..... 61
19.3	Internal behaviours..... 61
19.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 61
19.5	Formal description ..... 61
20	CursorShape Class ..... 62
20.1	Attributes ..... 62
20.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 62
20.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 62
20.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 62
20.2	Events..... 62
20.3	Internal behaviours..... 62
20.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 62
20.5	Formal description ..... 62
21	Variable Class ..... 62
21.1	Attributes ..... 63
21.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 63
21.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 63
21.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 63
21.2	Events..... 63
21.3	Internal behaviours..... 63
21.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 63
21.5	Formal description ..... 65
22	BooleanVariable Class..... 65
22.1	Attributes ..... 65
22.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 65
22.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 65
22.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 66
22.2	Events..... 66
22.3	Internal behaviours..... 66
22.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 66

	<b>Page</b>
22.5 Formal description .....	66
23 IntegerVariable Class .....	66
23.1 Attributes .....	66
23.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	66
23.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	66
23.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	66
23.2 Events.....	66
23.3 Internal behaviours.....	67
23.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	67
23.5 Formal description .....	69
24 OctetStringVariable Class.....	69
24.1 Attributes .....	69
24.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	69
24.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	69
24.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	69
24.2 Events.....	69
24.3 Internal behaviours.....	69
24.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	70
24.5 Formal description .....	70
25 ObjectRefVariable Class.....	70
25.1 Attributes .....	70
25.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	71
25.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	71
25.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	71
25.2 Events.....	71
25.3 Internal behaviours.....	71
25.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	71
25.5 Formal description .....	71
26 ContentRefVariable Class.....	71
26.1 Attributes .....	71
26.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	71
26.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	71
26.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	72
26.2 Events.....	72
26.3 Internal behaviours.....	72

	<b>Page</b>
26.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 72
26.5	Formal description ..... 72
27	Presentable Class ..... 72
27.1	Attributes ..... 72
27.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 72
27.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 72
27.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 72
27.2	Events..... 72
27.3	Internal behaviours..... 73
27.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 73
27.5	Formal description ..... 73
28	TokenManager Class ..... 73
28.1	Attributes ..... 74
28.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 74
28.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 74
28.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 75
28.2	Events..... 75
28.3	Internal behaviours..... 75
28.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 76
28.5	Formal description ..... 77
29	TokenGroup Class ..... 77
29.1	Attributes ..... 77
29.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 77
29.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 78
29.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 78
29.2	Events..... 78
29.3	Internal behaviours..... 78
29.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 79
29.5	Formal description ..... 79
30	ListGroup Class ..... 80
30.1	Attributes ..... 80
30.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 80
30.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 80
30.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 81
30.2	Events..... 83

	<b>Page</b>
30.3	Internal behaviours..... 84
30.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 86
30.5	Formal description ..... 91
31	Visible Class ..... 91
31.1	Attributes ..... 91
	31.1.1 Inherited attributes ..... 91
	31.1.2 Own exchanged attributes..... 91
	31.1.3 Own internal attributes ..... 92
31.2	Events..... 92
31.3	Internal behaviours..... 93
31.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 93
31.5	Formal description ..... 98
32	Bitmap Class ..... 99
32.1	Attributes ..... 99
	32.1.1 Inherited attributes ..... 99
	32.1.2 Own exchanged attributes..... 99
	32.1.3 Own internal attributes ..... 99
32.2	Events..... 100
32.3	Internal behaviours..... 100
32.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 100
32.5	Formal description ..... 101
33	LineArt Class ..... 101
33.1	Attributes ..... 101
	33.1.1 Inherited attributes ..... 101
	33.1.2 Own exchanged attributes..... 101
	33.1.3 Own internal attributes ..... 103
33.2	Events..... 103
33.3	Internal behaviours..... 103
33.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 103
33.5	Formal description ..... 106
34	Rectangle Class ..... 106
34.1	Attributes ..... 106
	34.1.1 Inherited attributes ..... 106
	34.1.2 Own exchanged attributes..... 106
	34.1.3 Own internal attributes ..... 107

	<b>Page</b>
34.2	Events..... 107
34.3	Internal behaviours..... 107
34.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 107
34.5	Formal description ..... 107
35	DynamicLineArt Class..... 107
35.1	Attributes ..... 107
35.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 107
35.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 107
35.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 107
35.2	Events..... 107
35.3	Internal behaviours..... 107
35.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 108
35.5	Formal description ..... 114
36	Text Class ..... 114
36.1	Attributes ..... 114
36.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 115
36.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 115
36.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 117
36.2	Events..... 118
36.3	Internal behaviours..... 118
36.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 118
36.5	Formal description ..... 120
37	Stream Class ..... 120
37.1	Attributes ..... 120
37.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 120
37.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 121
37.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 121
37.2	Events..... 123
37.3	Internal behaviours..... 124
37.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 124
37.5	Formal description ..... 127
38	Audio Class..... 127
38.1	Attributes ..... 128
38.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 128

	<b>Page</b>
38.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	128
38.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	128
38.2 Events.....	128
38.3 Internal behaviours.....	128
38.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	129
38.5 Formal description .....	129
39 Video Class .....	130
39.1 Attributes .....	130
39.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	130
39.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	130
39.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	130
39.2 Events.....	130
39.3 Internal behaviours.....	131
39.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	131
39.5 Formal description .....	131
40 RTGraphics Class .....	132
40.1 Attributes .....	132
40.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	132
40.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	132
40.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	132
40.2 Events.....	132
40.3 Internal behaviours.....	132
40.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	133
40.5 Formal description .....	133
41 Interactable Class.....	133
41.1 Attributes .....	133
41.1.1 Inherited attributes .....	133
41.1.2 Own exchanged attributes.....	133
41.1.3 Own internal attributes .....	134
41.2 Events.....	135
41.3 Internal behaviours.....	136
41.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions .....	136
41.5 Formal description .....	138
42 Slider Class .....	138

	<b>Page</b>
42.1	Attributes ..... 138
42.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 138
42.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 138
42.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 141
42.2	Events..... 141
42.3	Internal behaviour ..... 141
42.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 141
42.5	Formal description ..... 144
43	EntryField Class..... 144
43.1	Attributes ..... 144
43.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 144
43.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 145
43.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 146
43.2	Events..... 146
43.3	Internal behaviours..... 147
43.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 147
43.5	Formal description ..... 149
44	HyperText Class..... 149
44.1	Attributes ..... 149
44.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 149
44.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 149
44.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 149
44.2	Events..... 149
44.3	Internal behaviours..... 150
44.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 150
44.5	Formal description ..... 150
45	Button Class ..... 150
45.1	Attributes ..... 151
45.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 151
45.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 151
45.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 151
45.2	Events..... 151
45.3	Internal behaviours..... 152
45.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 152
45.5	Formal description ..... 153

	<b>Page</b>
46	Hotspot Class ..... 153
46.1	Attributes ..... 153
46.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 153
46.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 154
46.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 154
46.2	Events..... 154
46.3	Internal behaviours..... 154
46.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 154
46.5	Formal description ..... 154
47	PushButton Class ..... 154
47.1	Attributes ..... 154
47.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 154
47.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 155
47.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 155
47.2	Events..... 155
47.3	Internal behaviours..... 155
47.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 155
47.5	Formal description ..... 156
48	SwitchButton Class..... 157
48.1	Attributes ..... 157
48.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 157
48.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 157
48.1.3	Own internal attributes ..... 157
48.2	Events..... 157
48.3	Internal behaviours..... 157
48.4	Effect of MHEG-5 actions ..... 158
48.5	Formal description ..... 159
49	Action Class ..... 159
49.1	Attributes ..... 159
49.1.1	Inherited attributes ..... 159
49.1.2	Own exchanged attributes..... 159
49.2	Own internal attributes..... 159
49.3	Formal description ..... 160
50	Referencing Objects, Content, Values, Colour and XYPosition ..... 160
50.1	ObjectReference..... 160

	<b>Page</b>	
50.2	ContentReference.....	161
50.3	GenericObjectReference.....	161
50.4	GenericContentReference.....	161
50.5	GenericInteger.....	161
50.6	GenericBoolean.....	162
50.7	GenericOctetString.....	162
50.8	Colour.....	162
50.9	XYPosition.....	162
50.10	Resolution of generic values.....	162
51	Referencing MHEG-5 Objects.....	163
52	Name Spaces, RemoteProgram Calls and Connections.....	164
53	Event handling.....	164
53.1	Types of events.....	164
53.2	Synchronous events and asynchronous events.....	165
53.3	Event handling and Links.....	166
53.4	User input.....	166
53.5	User interaction.....	167
53.6	Cursor events.....	167
53.7	Error handling.....	167
54	Rendering Visibles.....	167
54.1	Coordinate system.....	167
54.2	Bounding box.....	168
54.3	Display stack.....	169
54.4	Transparent objects.....	169
54.5	Pixel aspect ratio.....	170
	Annex A – ASN.1 notation.....	170
	Annex B – Textual notation for MHEG-5 applications.....	195
B.1	General definitions.....	195
	B.1.1 Code.....	195
	B.1.2 Delimiter.....	195
	B.1.3 Comment.....	195
	B.1.4 Tag.....	195
B.2	Definitions of symbols.....	196
B.3	Terminal symbols.....	196

	<b>Page</b>
B.3.1 INTEGER .....	196
B.3.2 BOOLEAN .....	196
B.3.3 STRING .....	196
B.3.4 QPRINTABLE.....	197
B.3.5 BASE64 .....	197
B.3.6 Null .....	197
B.3.7 Enumeration values .....	197
B.4 MHEG-5 Object Definitions.....	197
B.4.1 Root Class.....	198
B.4.2 Group Class .....	198
B.4.3 Application Class.....	199
B.4.4 Scene Class .....	199
B.4.5 Ingredient Class .....	200
B.4.6 Link Class .....	200
B.4.7 Program Class.....	200
B.4.8 ResidentProgram Class.....	200
B.4.9 RemoteProgram Class .....	201
B.4.10 InterchangedProgram Class .....	201
B.4.11 Palette Class.....	201
B.4.12 Font Class .....	201
B.4.13 CursorShape Class.....	201
B.4.14 Variable Class.....	201
B.4.15 BooleanVariable Class.....	201
B.4.16 IntegerVariable Class.....	201
B.4.17 OctetStringVariable Class .....	201
B.4.18 ObjectRefVariable Class .....	201
B.4.19 ContentRefVariable Class .....	201
B.4.20 Presentable Class .....	201
B.4.21 TokenManager Class .....	202
B.4.22 TokenGroup Class .....	202
B.4.23 ListGroup Class .....	202
B.4.24 Visible Class .....	202
B.4.25 Bitmap Class.....	202
B.4.26 LineArt Class .....	202
B.4.27 Rectangle Class.....	203
B.4.28 DynamicLineArt Class .....	203
B.4.29 Text Class .....	203
B.4.30 Stream Class .....	203
B.4.31 Audio Class.....	203

	<b>Page</b>
B.4.32 Video Class.....	203
B.4.33 RTGraphics Class .....	203
B.4.34 Interactable Class .....	204
B.4.35 Slider Class .....	204
B.4.36 EntryField Class.....	204
B.4.37 HyperText Class .....	204
B.4.38 Button Class.....	204
B.4.39 Hotspot Class.....	204
B.4.40 PushButton Class.....	204
B.4.41 SwitchButton Class.....	204
B.4.42 Action Class.....	205
B.4.43 Referencing Objects, Contents, Values, Colour and Position .....	212
Appendix I – Bootstrap of an MHEG-5 engine .....	212
Appendix II – Definition of application domains .....	213
II.1 Object interchange format.....	213
II.2 Set of classes .....	213
II.3 Set of features .....	213
II.4 Content data encoding.....	214
II.5 UserInput registers .....	214
II.6 Semantic constraints on the MHEG-5 applications .....	215
II.7 EngineEvent.....	216
II.8 GetEngineSupport.....	216
II.9 Protocol mapping and external interaction .....	216



## **Recommendation T.172**

### **MHEG-5 – SUPPORT FOR BASE-LEVEL INTERACTIVE APPLICATIONS**

*(Geneva, 1998)*

#### **1 Scope**

This Recommendation specifies semantics and final-form interchange syntax for MHEG-5 objects, based on concepts defined in Recommendation T.171. These objects are intended for use in the domain of simple client/server interactive multimedia applications, e.g. (Near) Video-on-Demand applications, navigation and browsing applications.

##### **1.1 Specificity of the scope**

Since it is expected that this Recommendation be used for interoperability of applications across platforms, the scope focuses on a specific and precise definition of MHEG-5 classes. This Recommendation recognizes the semantics implied by the specification of the MHEG-5 objects and by interpretation of MHEG-5 behaviours within the using system.

##### **1.2 Issues outside the scope of this Recommendation**

The scope excludes any standardization of models, services, systems, protocols or applications that are likely to make use of MHEG-5 objects.

The coded representation of content data is not in the scope of this Recommendation.

#### **2 Normative references**

The following ITU-T Recommendations and other references contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of this Recommendation. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All Recommendations and other references are subject to revision; all users of this Recommendation are therefore encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent edition of the Recommendations and other references listed below. A list of the currently valid ITU-T Recommendations is regularly published.

- ITU-T Recommendation X.680 (1994) | ISO/IEC 8824-1:1995, *Information technology – Abstract Syntax Notation One (ASN.1): Specification of basic notation.*
- ITU-T Recommendation X.690 (1994) | ISO/IEC 8825-1:1995, *Information technology – ASN.1 encoding rules: Specification of Basic Encoding Rules (BER), Canonical Encoding Rules (CER) and Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER).*
- ISO/IEC 646:1991, *Information technology – ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange.*
- RFC 1521 (1993), *MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) Part One: Mechanisms for Specifying and Describing the Format of Internet Message Bodies.*

### 3 Terms and definitions

This Recommendation defines the following terms:

**3.1 abstract class:** Class that is never instantiated into an interchangeable MHEG-5 object.

NOTE – An abstract class defines attributes, behaviours and semantics of actions that may be exchanged as parts of any MHEG-5 object of the concrete subclasses of this abstract class.

**3.2 action:** Set of elementary actions.

**3.3 active:** State of any MHEG-5 object when the *Activation* behaviour has been completed successfully for this object.

An active object has its *RunningStatus* set to *True*.

**3.4 application domain:** Specific domain of applications making use of this Recommendation and providing additional tools and values in order to create a practical instance of an MHEG-5 environment.

NOTE – More information on application domains is provided in Appendix II.

**3.5 application scope:** Common scope of all MHEG-5 objects (scenes and ingredients) accessed from an MHEG-5 application.

**3.6 attribute:** Named and typed value attached to a class.

**3.7 available:** State of any MHEG-5 object when the *Preparation* behaviour has been completed successfully for this object.

An available object has its *AvailabilityStatus* set to *True*.

**3.8 base class:** MHEG-5 class which defines some attributes, behaviours and semantics of actions that are shared by a given MHEG-5 class.

**3.9 concrete class:** Class of any MHEG-5 object that may be encoded and interchanged according to the specifications provided in Annex A or Annex B.

**3.10 elementary action:** Abstract representation of a message that may be sent to an object.

NOTE – This Recommendation defines the semantics of available elementary actions for each MHEG-5 class. Note that the MHEG-5 class Action (with a capital A) has a different meaning described in clause 49.

**3.11 event:** Abstract representation of an occurrence of a special meaning for any MHEG-5 object.

NOTE – Events are used to trigger Link conditions and bring out the execution of sequences of elementary actions.

**3.12 exchanged attribute:** Attribute that is part of the interchangeable byte-code representation of an MHEG-5 object, and transmitted with that object.

**3.13 inactive:** State of any MHEG-5 object when the *Deactivation* behaviour has been completed successfully or when no *Activation* behaviour has been applied successfully on this object.

An inactive MHEG-5 object has its *RunningStatus* set to *False*.

**3.14 inherited attribute:** Attribute that is defined in a base class of the class of the MHEG-5 object.

**3.15 interchangeable representation:** Octet string, which contains the encoded exchanged attributes of this MHEG-5 object complying with the ASN.1 syntax and encoding provided in Annex A or, when textual representation is preferred, with Annex B.

**3.16 internal attribute:** Abstract data structure, never byte-code encoded or exchanged, that is used to define semantics of internal behaviours or actions for any MHEG-5 object.

NOTE – Any MHEG-5 engine might consider that an internal attribute is part of the internal representation of the MHEG-5 object; however, this is not mandatory. What is mandatory is to implement the functionality described by these internal attributes.

**3.17 internal behaviour:** Abstract function that defines the semantics of MHEG-5 elementary actions for any MHEG-5 class.

NOTE – An internal behaviour of a class is most of the time overridden by internal behaviours of subclasses of this class. An MHEG-5 engine might consider that an internal behaviour of a class is a private method of this class; however, this is not mandatory.

**3.18 MHEG-5 application:** Set of scenes and control information that allows the user to navigate between scenes.

NOTE – The MHEG-5 class Application (with a capital A) has a different, more specific, meaning that is given in clause 10.

**3.19 MHEG-5 class:** Abstract definition of exchanged and internal attributes of parts of interchangeable multimedia/hypermedia objects as well as definition of the semantics of internal behaviours and the effect of MHEG-5 actions for these objects.

**3.20 MHEG-5 engine:** Process or set of processes that interpret MHEG-5 objects encoded according to the encoding specifications defined in Annex A or in Annex B.

**3.21 MHEG-5 object:** Instance of any MHEG-5 class.

NOTE – An MHEG-5 object is not a physical object, but rather an abstraction that may have many representations of different types. Various software services handle such representations.

**3.22 MHEG-5 scene:** Structure that coordinates the presentation (visual and audible) of MHEG-5 objects.

**3.23 mix-in class:** Abstract class that does not inherit from the Root class.

Examples: *Interactable* class, *TokenManager* class.

**3.24 non-available:** State of any MHEG-5 object when the *Destruction* behaviour has been completed successfully or when no *Preparation* behaviour has been applied successfully on this object.

A non-available object has its *AvailabilityStatus* set to *FALSE*. Even if an MHEG-5 object does not exist in the MHEG-5 engine, its *AvailabilityStatus* exists and is set to *FALSE*.

**3.25 subclass:** Any MHEG-5 class that shares the same attributes, behaviours and semantics of actions as another MHEG-5 class.

## 4 Conformance

This clause specifies conformance requirements for MHEG-5 engines and for MHEG-5 applications.

### 4.1 Conformance of MHEG-5 objects

Any MHEG-5 object shall have an octet representation. For interchange purposes, the octet representation shall be compliant with the ASN.1 syntax and encoding defined in Annex A, or with the textual notation grammar defined in Annex B. The application domain shall choose which representation to use: that of Annex A or that of Annex B, and that representation shall then be used exclusively throughout the application domain.

The attributes of any MHEG-5 object shall meet all requirements defined in the relevant subclauses of this Recommendation.

## **4.2 Conformance of MHEG-5 engines**

Conformance of MHEG-5 engines can only be measured with regard to a complete application domain definition. To fully specify conformance, an application domain shall define, in addition to the interchange representation, the following:

- 1) a set of classes from the list of all classes of this Recommendation, as prescribed in 4.2.1;
- 2) a set of features from the list in 4.2.2;
- 3) additional concrete choices as listed in 4.2.3.

NOTE – Refer to Appendix II for an example of complete definition of an application domain.

### **4.2.1 Conformance to the acceptance of a set of Classes and Elementary Actions**

Conformance to the acceptance of a set of Classes and Elementary Actions is defined as follows.

Any MHEG-5 engine is required to implement at least the following minimum set of classes:

- Application Class  
All attributes, events and internal behaviours shall be implemented.
- Scene Class  
All attributes, events and internal behaviours shall be implemented.
- Link Class  
All attributes, events and internal behaviours shall be implemented.
- Action Class  
All attributes, events and internal behaviours shall be implemented.

All application domains shall define compliance to a set of classes containing at least the minimum set above. An application domain may specify a larger set of classes and elementary actions for compliance; in any case, the application domain shall clearly list the classes and elementary actions supported.

When additional classes are implemented in any MHEG-5 engine, the engine shall implement all of their attributes, events, internal behaviours and elementary actions as defined in this Recommendation, with the possible exception of optional features listed in 4.2.2. Concerning the Action class, the engine shall implement all effects of MHEG-5 elementary actions corresponding to the specified set of classes. It is the role of each application domain to choose and well define a set of classes that is required for that specific application domain.

If a class is not handled by an MHEG-5 engine, and an object of this class is sent to the MHEG-5 engine, this causes an error that is handled by the default error handling defined in 53.7.

### **4.2.2 Conformance to a set of engine functionality**

Conformance to a set of engine functionality is defined as follows.

Any MHEG-5 engine shall provide all normative mechanisms defined in clauses 51 to 54.

Any MHEG-5 engine shall implement all effects of MHEG-5 actions and the internal behaviours of MHEG-5 classes included in the definition of their application domain, except for the following optional features:

- Ancillary connections (corresponding to OpenConnection and CloseConnection actions);

- Caching (corresponding to caching of MHEG-5 objects and content data of Ingredient objects);
- Cloning (corresponding to the Clone action defined in Ingredient class);
- Free-moving cursor;
- Bitmap and Video scaling (corresponding to the ScaleBitmap and ScaleVideo actions of the Bitmap and Video classes);
- Stacking of Applications (corresponding to the Spawn action of the Application class);
- Trick mode (corresponding to the SetSpeed action of the Stream class).

An application domain shall clearly define a list of which ones of the above features are mandatory or optional for conformance to the application domain.

### 4.2.3 Additional requirements for conformance specification

In addition to the two items above, the following tables shall be specified by a given application domain to fully define conformance.

NOTE – For each one of these tables, a concrete example is given in Appendix II, thus defining an example of application domain.

- Content data encoding

The application domain shall specify which type of content data is supported and which type of encoding is supported. The following two tables shall be filled for each application domain.

**Supported content data tyre**

Attribute	Permissible values
FontAttributes	
FontName	
AbsoluteColour	
CharacterSet	
TransitionEffect	

**Encoding table**

Type of content	Content encoding	Hook values (Integer)
Font encoding format		
Palette encoding format		
Bitmap encoding format		
Text encoding format		
EntryField encoding format		
HyperText encoding format		
Stream encoding format		
LineArt encoding format		
CursorShape encoding format		
InterchangedProgram encoding format		
AbsoluteColour encoding format		

- **UserInput registers**

In order to have a working instantiation standard, the application domain shall specify one or more InputEventRegisters. Each register has a number, which is exchanged as one of the parameters of a Scene object and a content (which is not exchanged) consisting of a set of numbers (representing UserInputEventTags) and a name. The name/number pairs bind a specific UserInputEventTag to a logical input event. It is the task of the engine implementor to bind the logical input event to one or more physical input events.

The following table shall be filled for each application domain.

Register #	UserInputEventTag	Semantics	Comment
<i>(Integer)</i>	...	...	...

- **EngineEvent**

An MHEG-5 application domain may specify a set of numbers associated with EngineEvent to distinguish between the various external events that lead to the generation of the EngineEvent. In such case, each of these specific EngineEvent shall be mapped to a corresponding Integer in a table such as the one below. Values not reserved by the application domain are free for use by the application programmer.

EngineEvent	EventTag
...	<i>(Integer)</i>

- **GetEngineSupport**

Application domains may define, in addition to the strings mentioned in this Recommendation, other permissible strings for the GetEngineSupport action. In such case, the application domain shall clearly list these additional strings.

- **Semantic constraints on the MHEG-5 applications**

For each feature defined by a string for the GetEngineSupport action, an application domain may choose to constrain its applications in some way. In such cases a table of constraints shall be provided.

Feature	Constraint
...	...

- **Protocol mapping and external interaction**

Finally there are the different actions that have an effect that is external to the runtime. These are functions that retrieve objects, manipulate streams and call external function. For interoperability, these actions shall have a common underlying external effect. This usually implies that there is a consistent mapping of these actions on the underlying external communications functions for users of MHEG-5 application domains. The following mappings shall be provided by the application domain.

MHEG-5 entity	Mapping needed	Semantics of MHEG-5 structures that needs specification
OpenConnection, CloseConnection	Mapping to connection management (and possibly session management) protocols in the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In OpenConnection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Protocol</li> <li>– Address</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
RemoteProgram objects	Mapping to RemoteProgram call protocol in the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Call and Fork: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Name</li> <li>– Parameters</li> <li>– ProgramConnectionTag</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Application name space	Mapping to name space of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ObjectReference</li> <li>• ContentReference</li> </ul>
Application name space in case a TransitionTo action uses the ConnectionTag parameter	Mapping to the name space of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ObjectReference</li> <li>• ContentReference</li> </ul>
Persistent storage name space	Mapping to the name space of the persistent storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In StorePersistent and ReadPersistent: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– InFileName, OutFileName</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stream actions	Mapping to the stream interface of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Stream: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Speed</li> <li>– CounterPosition</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stream events	Mapping to stream states and stream events in the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Stream: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– StreamPlaying, StreamStopped (mapping to application-domain stream state machine)</li> <li>– CounterPosition</li> <li>– StreamEventTag</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## 5 Overview of the MHEG-5 classes

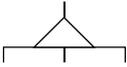
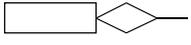
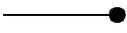
This Recommendation was developed to support the distribution of interactive multimedia applications in a client/server architecture<sup>1</sup> across platforms of different types and brands. This Recommendation defines a final-form representation for application interchange. The applications consist mainly of declarative code, but provisions for calling procedural code have been made. MHEG-5 applications need only to be authored once and then run on any platform that is compliant to this Recommendation. The developed applications would reside on the server, and as portions of the application are needed, they will be downloaded to the client. In a broadcast environment, this download mechanism could rely, for instance, on cyclic rebroadcasting of all portions of the application. It is the responsibility of the client to have a runtime that interprets the application parts, presents the application to the user, and handles the local interaction with the user.

<sup>1</sup> The server can be a *virtual* server, such as the collection of a number of broadcast channels on a broadcast network.

Any MHEG-5 application is made up of scenes and objects that are common to all scenes. A scene contains a group of objects used to present information (graphics, sound, video, etc.) along with localized behaviour based on events firing (e.g. the Left button being pushed activates a sound). At most, one scene is active at any one time. Navigation in an application is done by making transitions between scenes.

The interactive system has the ability to display visual objects in a rectangular coordinate system with a fixed size, and to play audible objects. User input devices (e.g. remote control, game controller, etc.) may be used with the runtime to allow interaction with the applications.

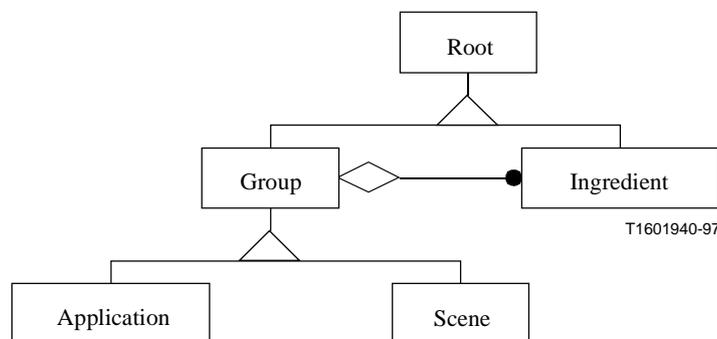
The figures in this informative clause present the class diagram of the object classes defined by this Recommendation. Their meaning is explained in Figure 1.

	The boxes depict an MHEG-5 class Class names in bold depict a concrete class
	Class names in normal style depict an abstract class
	Triangles depict inheritance relationships
	Diamonds depict composition relationships
	Dark circles depict a zero-to-more relationship

T1601930-97

**Figure 1/T.172 – Legend of Class diagrams**

Figure 2 presents an overview of the top layer in the MHEG-5 class hierarchy. The next part of this clause introduces the concepts defined by this Recommendation by explaining the classes shown in Figure 2 and their subclasses.



T1601940-97

**Figure 2/T.172 – Diagram of the top of the class hierarchy**

## 5.1 Root

This is the abstract base class for all other MHEG-5 classes<sup>2</sup>. Its main functionality is to provide semantics for generic MHEG-5 behaviour (activation, deactivation, preparation, destruction), and to provide a mechanism for object identification.

## 5.2 Group

This is an abstract base class for the classes Application and Scene. Its main functionality is that of allowing the grouping of objects of other classes for exchange between the MHEG-5 engine and other entities (similar to a «set» in standard object-oriented terminology). The objects that are grouped by this class are objects of the class Ingredient. Each Ingredient is always contained in exactly one Group. Objects within a Group may be referenced from objects in other Groups under certain conditions (see below).

## 5.3 Application

Objects of the Application class group objects of the Ingredient class. The Application class also has the semantic constraint that only one Application object may be active<sup>3</sup> at once, and that no other objects may be active unless an Application object is active.

An idle MHEG-5 engine starts an application by preparing and activating the corresponding Application object. When the Application object becomes active, it automatically runs an OnStartUp action, which can be used to run the first Scene object of the application. Since (exactly) one Application object is active whenever another object is active, the Ingredients contained in the Application object are visible and available to other objects that are active simultaneously. More specifically, any Ingredients contained in an Application object are available to the active Scene. This can be used to describe application-wide behaviour.

## 5.4 Scene

Objects of the Scene class group objects of the Ingredient class. The purpose of the Scene class is to allow spatially and/or temporally coordinated presentation. Only one Scene object may be active at a time within an MHEG-5 engine. A Scene object must be active in order for any ingredient (be it contained in a Scene or in an Application object) to be displayed.

The Scene class provides the special action TransitionTo, which makes it possible to perform a graphical transition between two scenes. Objects contained in a scene can only be displayed when that scene is active. Object that needs to be displayed across several scenes (e.g. to have uninterrupted presentation over a scene transition) must be contained in an application object. Finally, the Scene class provides information about the coordinate system to be used for visual presentation.

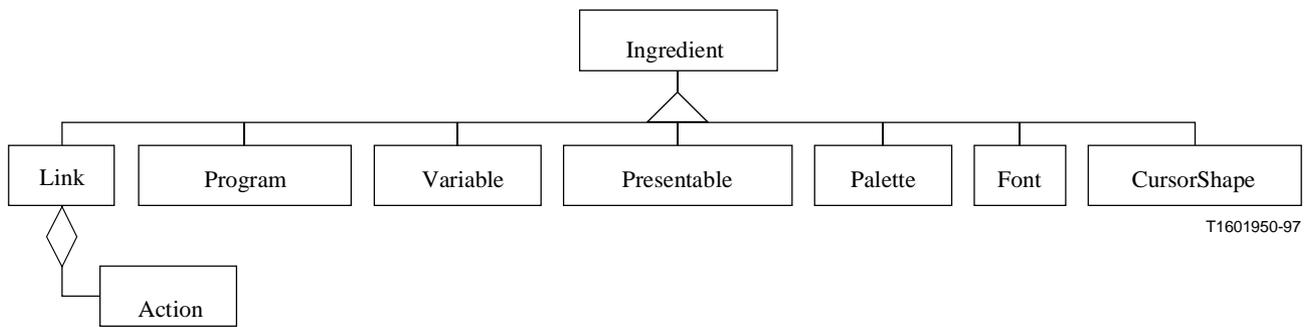
## 5.5 Ingredient

The Ingredient class is an abstract base class for the classes Link, Program, Palette, Font, CursorShape, Variable and Presentable. The subclasses of the Ingredient class are presented in Figure 3. The main functionality of the Ingredient class is to specify the generic behaviour of objects that can be part of a Scene or an Application object.

---

<sup>2</sup> With the exception of the abstract mix-in classes and of the Action class.

<sup>3</sup> For the definition of the term "active", see 3.3.



T1601950-97

**Figure 3/T.172 – Diagram of subclasses of the Ingredient class**

## 5.6 Link

Link objects are used to express the behaviour of MHEG-5 applications. A Link object consists of a condition and an Action object. When the condition part evaluates to True, the Link is said to «fire»; this leads to the running of the associated Action object. The condition contains three parts: an event code (identifying which event has to be reacted on), a reference to the object from which the event should emanate, and a value that specifies the required value of the event parameter. In other words, a Link fires only if it is active and only if the right event is generated by the right object and contains the right event parameter. Active Links shall be part of either an active Scene or an active Application.

## 5.7 Action

An Action object has the functionality of executing, in synchronous sequence, a series of «elementary actions» as the result of a Link firing. An elementary action consists of the object to which the action is to be «targeted» and a list of values representing the parameters of the action. In fact, targeting an elementary action to an object corresponds to calling a method of an object in any ordinary object-oriented programming language. All elementary actions available are listed in clause 49.

The Action class does not inherit from any other MHEG-5 classes. Specifically, it does not inherit from Root, which means that Action objects cannot be addressed as individual entities.

## 5.8 Program

The Program class provides the functionality of calling a piece of procedural code from within the MHEG-5 context and exchanging parameters with it.

The Program class has the following three subclasses corresponding to the three types of procedural calls that can be made:

- ResidentProgram  
Procedural call to a piece of code that is specific to the device on which the MHEG-5 engine is running. It can be used, for instance, to call device-specific runtime libraries.
- RemoteProgram  
Procedural call to a piece of code that is located on a device different than the one where the MHEG-5 engine is running. It can be used, for instance, to implement a remote program call, where the actual body of the program is located at the server in a client-server system.

- **InterchangedProgram**  
Procedural call to a piece of code which is exchanged as a part of an MHEG-5 object. The purpose of this class is to provide functionality needed for exchanging pieces of procedural code, and for calling those pieces of code.

## **5.9 Palette, Font, and CursorShape**

The Palette class provides the possibility to encapsulate the encoded representation of a Colour Look-Up Table (CLUT). The function of a CLUT is to translate a colour index to a true colour value. A Palette may be used, for instance, with bitmaps to specify the colours in which the bitmap is to be rendered.

Similarly, the Font class allows applications to encapsulate the encoded representation of a font. A Font object, when associated with a Text object, is used to render the text of that object.

The CursorShape class, finally, allows applications to encapsulate the encoded representation of the bitmaps, mask, and other data needed to render a free-moving cursor. The free-moving cursor shape can be set and reset using a method of the Scene class.

For Fonts, Palettes and CursorShapes, the actual representation of the objects is not specified by this Recommendation. However, an application domain where fonts and/or CLUTs and/or free-moving cursors are necessary features of applications can specify its encoding and semantics.

## **5.10 Variable**

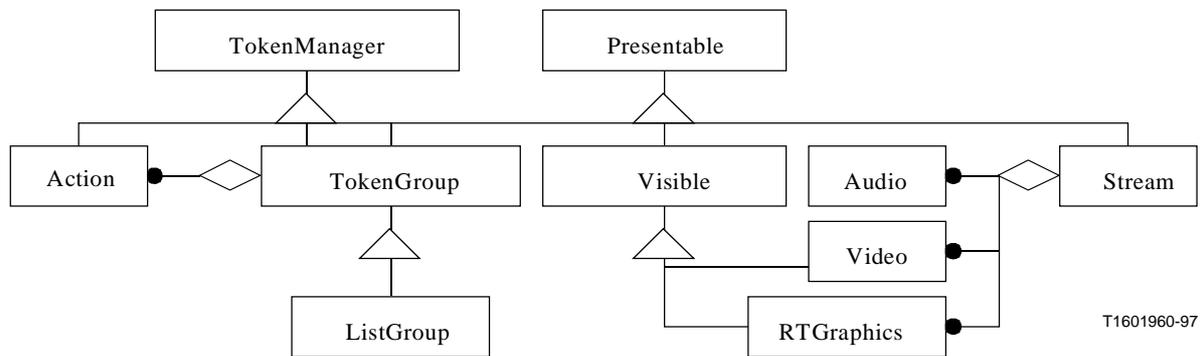
The Variable class provides the possibility to store and retrieve values. The Variable class has five subclasses corresponding to five different types of variables:

- BooleanVariable;
- IntegerVariable;
- OctetStringVariable;
- ObjectRefVariable;
- ContentRefVariable.

Possible uses of Variables include parameter passing to and from Program calls, storage of the state of other MHEG-5 objects, passing indirect parameter values to actions and address indirection, i.e. as pointers to MHEG-5 objects.

## **5.11 Presentable**

The Presentable class is an abstract base class for the MHEG-5 classes Audio, Visible, TokenGroup, and Stream. The subclasses of the Presentable class are presented in Figure 4.



**Figure 4/T.172 – Diagram of subclasses of the Presentable class**

Objects of the Presentable class represent information that can be directly seen or heard by the user. An important functionality of the Presentable class is to handle the actual encoded representation of the content data. This can be done either by «inclusion» or by «reference». In the former case, the content data is actually transmitted as part of the Presentable object itself; in the latter case, the Presentable object merely provides an external reference to the data.

### 5.12 TokenGroup

The TokenGroup class provides the facility to navigate a logical token among a set of Visible objects. This structure can be used, for example, to manage the navigation of a «focus» among a set of buttons or other elements of a Scene. Some sets of actions may also be attached to the objects and executed on demand on the Visible object that has the token. The latter feature provides a compact way of expressing behaviour when an element of the group gets or loses the focus.

### 5.13 ListGroup

The ListGroup class completes the TokenGroup class, providing functionality for selecting objects in a long list. It is best suited to implement a menu for selection, a group of checkboxes, a carousel of bitmaps, a fill-in form, a scrollable list of items, etc. In addition, the ListGroup class provides facilities to dynamically add and remove items to the group.

### 5.14 Stream

The Stream class defines a multiplex of continuous media for synchronization in time. Audio, Video and RTGraphics objects might be elementary streams of a Stream multiplex: they are intended to be presented at the same time to the user. This structure can be used, for instance, to present video and audio synchronously and to switch from one audio channel to another. The content data of the Stream object is a reference to a real multiplex containing the elementary streams and some additional data for synchronization. During the rendering process, the Stream player generates time-based events and marker-based events that might be used by the MHEG-5 application to trigger some Links.

### 5.15 Audio

The Audio class implements a sequence of audio data that can be used as an elementary stream of a Stream multiplex.

## 5.16 Interactable

The Interactable class is an abstract mix-in class inherited by the MHEG-5 classes HyperText, EntryField, Slider, and Button. Its main functionality is that of allowing the user to interact with objects of its subclasses. These interactions enable the user to change the status and/or appearance of the objects, for instance by entering text in an EntryField object. When interaction is taking place, a certain class of events, called the «UserInput events» are not visible to Link objects, since those events are assumed to be used for the user interaction. The interaction can be aborted by targeting a certain action to the Interactable object.

Another functionality of the Interactable class is the ability to generate events associated with free-moving cursors (CursorEnter, CursorLeave).

## 5.17 Visible

The Visible class implements the functionality associated with rendering pieces of visual material at some location on the display screen. The subclasses of the Visible class are presented in Figure 5.

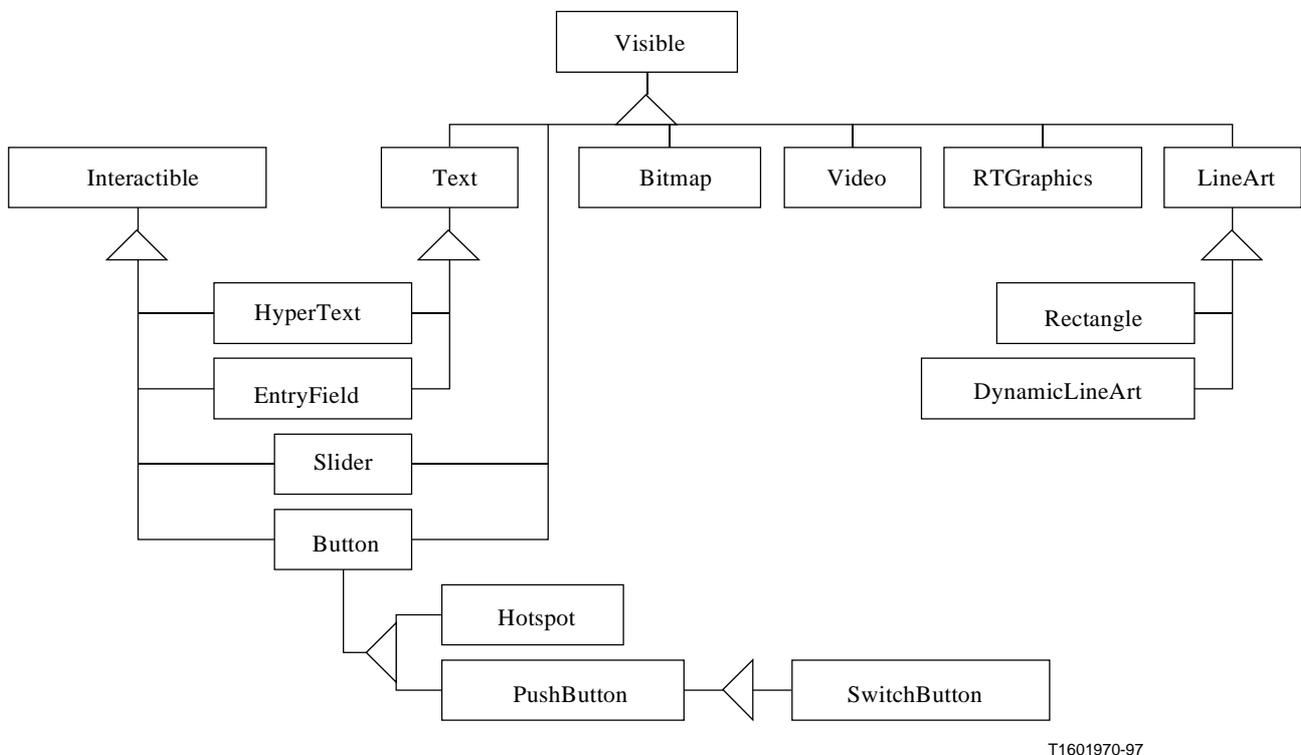


Figure 5/T.172 – Diagram of subclasses of the Visible class

The subclasses of the Visible class are described below:

- **LineArt**  
An object of the LineArt class represents a graphical object with vectorial representation. It can be used, for instance, to present polyline objects, ellipses, bezier curves, etc.
- **DynamicLineArt**  
An object of the DynamicLineArt class represents a graphical object that can be dynamically changed. It can be used to draw lines or curves that need to be presented on the fly.
- **Rectangle**
- **Bitmap**

- Video
- RTGraphics
 

An object of the RTGraphics (Real Time Graphics) class represents a stream of graphics objects that are displayed using autonomous placement and synchronization. The RTGraphics stream can be used in conjunction with video and audio, for instance, to create a subtitling application.
- Text
 

Text objects represent text strings. A Text object may be associated with a Font object, which describes the font in which the text should be rendered (in case no font object is given, the default font is assumed). Text has two subclasses, HyperText and EntryField, which implement different types of interactive text.
- Slider
 

A Slider is an Interactable used to let the user set linearly a position within a certain range (given by a minimum and maximum value).
- Button
 

The Button class has two subclasses: PushButton and Hotspot. The PushButton class has one subclass: SwitchButton. Buttons are rectangular areas on the screen with which the user can interact. Each of the three types of buttons has a specific event-generating behaviour attached to it. PushButtons and SwitchButtons are associated with a text item, which represents the text to be displayed in the middle of the button.

## 6 Structure of this Recommendation

The following clauses of this Recommendation define the semantics of the MHEG-5 classes. This is done on the basis of an abstract syntax notation used to describe the attributes of the exchanged objects. The semantics of the object classes are described in normative text. Clauses 51 to 54 define some normative mechanisms that the MHEG-5 engine is required to implement. Annex A defines the final-form syntax to be used for object exchange. Annex B defines a textual interchange format which maps one-to-one on the final-form binary exchange format.

## 7 Notations

The following notations are used in the following clauses to describe the MHEG-5 classes defined by this Recommendation.

### <Name of the Class>

Description     <Short description of the semantics of the class>

Base class        <Name of the base class>

Subclasses       <List of subclasses, if any>

Status            <Abstract class | Concrete class>

### 7.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for the class.

### 7.1.1 Inherited attributes

Requirements and constraints on attributes inherited from the base classes.

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
<Attribute Name>	<Class name>	<Specific constraints for the current subclass>

### 7.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

List of exchanged attributes for this class.

<Attribute Name>    <Description of the attribute>  
                          <Type of the attribute>  
                          <Default value>

When the attribute is optional, default value is the value that shall be used when the attribute is not encoded. When the attribute is mandatory, default value is a hint on the most usual value to use.

### 7.1.3 Own internal attributes

List of internal attributes for this class.

<Attribute Name>    <Description of the attribute>  
                          <Initial value>

## 7.2 Events

These are the events that can be generated from objects of this class. They are used to express Link conditions that shall be checked when such an event is generated.

<Event Name>        <Description of the event>  
                          <Context of occurrence of the event>  
                          <Description of the event data associated with the event, if any>

## 7.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviours are defined for most MHEG-5 classes:

- *Preparation;*
- *Destruction;*
- *Activation;*
- *Deactivation.*

In addition, the *Interaction* internal behaviour is defined for some MHEG-5 classes. These behaviours correspond to semantic requirements for operations internal to the MHEG-5 engine, similar to the notion of «private» methods of a class in object-oriented terminology. They are not encoded nor transmitted within an Application description.

When a behaviour is not described for an MHEG-5 class, the semantics of the behaviour for its base class applies.

<Behaviour name>    <Semantics of the behaviour within the context of the current class>

## 7.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

Define the semantics and syntax of MHEG-5 actions that may be targeted to the current MHEG-5 class.

<Action Name>            <Semantics of the action within the context of the current class>

## 7.5 Formal description

Description of an encoded MHEG-5 object of the current class in Extended Backus-Naur Form (EBNF):

Class Name	-->	First part, Second part
First part	-->	Subpart   Alternative
Second part	-->	Terminal (constant or type)

## 8 Root Class

Description:            Root class of all MHEG-5 classes

Base class:            None

Subclasses:            Group, Ingredient

Status:                Abstract class

### 8.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 8.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has no inherited attributes.

#### 8.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

ObjectIdentifier        This is a mandatory data structure, which consists of the following parts:

- Optional GroupIdentifier.  
         Unique identifier of a group of MHEG-5 objects.
  - Optional OctetString.
  - Default value: The GroupIdentifier of the Group within which the object is encoded.
- ObjectNumber.  
         Unique identifier of any MHEG-5 object within a group.
  - Integer.

### 8.1.3 Own internal MHEG-5 attributes

This class defines the following internal attributes:

<i>AvailabilityStatus</i>	<p>State of availability of the object.</p> <p>When the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> of the object is True, the object is available; this means that the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour of the object has ended successfully.</p> <p>When the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> of the object is False, the object is non-available; this means that the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour has not ended successfully or has not been invoked, or that the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour has been applied successfully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Boolean value.</li><li>• Default value: False.</li></ul>
<i>RunningStatus</i>	<p>State of activity of the object.</p> <p>When the <i>RunningStatus</i> of the object is True, the object is active; this means that the <i>Activation</i> behaviour of the object has ended successfully.</p> <p>When the <i>RunningStatus</i> of the object is False, the object is inactive; this means that the <i>Activation</i> behaviour has not successfully ended or has not been invoked, or that the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour has been applied successfully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Boolean value.</li><li>• Default value: False.</li></ul>

## 8.2 Events

This class defines the following events:

<i>IsAvailable</i>	<p>This event is generated when the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> attribute changes from False to True as a result of the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour ending successfully for the object.</p> <p>NOTE – The purpose of this event is to indicate to the MHEG-5 engine that the object is available and can be activated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No associated data.</li></ul>
<i>ContentAvailable</i>	<p>This event is generated when the object and its content are available in an optimal state to the MHEG-5 engine. Its purpose is to indicate to the MHEG-5 engine that the <i>Activation</i> behaviour can happen in a timely manner. This event is generated asynchronously with the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour for the object.</p> <p>NOTE – Each MHEG-5 engine may choose to give a different meaning to that degree of content availability. This Recommendation does not specify any meaning or time requirement in this matter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No associated data.</li></ul>

<i>IsDeleted</i>	<p>This event is generated when the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> attribute changes from True to False as a result of the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour ending successfully for the object.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No associated data.</li> </ul>
<i>IsRunning</i>	<p>This event is generated when the <i>RunningStatus</i> attribute changes from False to True as a result of the <i>Activation</i> behaviour ending successfully for the object.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No associated data.</li> </ul>
<i>IsStopped</i>	<p>This event is generated when the <i>RunningStatus</i> attribute changes from True to False as a result of the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour ending successfully for the object.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No associated data.</li> </ul>

### 8.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines the following internal behaviours:

<i>Preparation</i>	<p>This behaviour has the basic semantics of allocating all requested resources in order to handle or to present this object.</p> <p>Apply the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) If the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> attribute of the object is True, abort the behaviour. Otherwise:</li> <li>2) Retrieve the object from an entity outside the engine.</li> <li>3) Set each internal attribute of the object to its initial value.</li> <li>4) Set the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> attribute to True.</li> <li>5) Generate an <i>IsAvailable</i> event.</li> </ol> <p>The above steps are executed <i>synchronously</i>. The following step is asynchronous.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6) Generate a <i>ContentAvailable</i> event.</li> </ol>
<i>Destruction</i>	<p>This behaviour has the basic semantics of asking the MHEG-5 engine to delete the object.</p> <p>Apply the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) If the <i>AvailabilityStatus</i> attribute of the object is False, abort the behaviour. Otherwise:</li> <li>2) If the <i>RunningStatus</i> attribute of the object is True: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour;</li> <li>b) wait for an <i>IsStopped</i> event from the object.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>This shall all be done synchronously.</p>

- 3) If the *RunningStatus* attribute of the object is False, execute the following actions synchronously.
- 4) If the *GroupCachePriority* attribute of the object itself or of the group this object belongs to is set to 0, the MHEG-5 engine shall free all resources allocated to the object.

Note that *GroupCachePriority* is defined in Group class.

- 5) If the *GroupCachePriority* attribute of the object itself or of the group this object belongs to is different from 0, the MHEG-5 engine may decide to either actually free all resources allocated to the object or to cache it.

- 6) Generate an *IsDeleted* event.

Note that the *IsDeleted* event shall be generated whether the resources mentioned above were actually freed or not; the object is deleted in the sense defined by this Recommendation, even if some associated resources are not.

### *Activation*

This behaviour has the basic semantics of immediately making this object active.

Apply the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the *RunningStatus* attribute of the object is True, abort the behaviour. Otherwise:
- 2) If the *AvailabilityStatus* attribute of the object is False:
  - a) apply the *Preparation* behaviour to the object;
  - b) wait for an *IsAvailable* event from the object.

These steps are executed synchronously, meaning that the engine will not perform other actions until the *Preparation* behaviour has ended.

NOTE 1 – The effect of the *Activation* behaviour (e.g. the display of a bitmap) will continue even after the behaviour itself has returned.

NOTE 2 – The generation of an *IsRunning* event and the modification of the *RunningStatus* internal attribute are parts of the *Activation* behaviour of subclasses of the Root class.

### *Deactivation*

This behaviour has the basic semantics of notifying the MHEG-5 engine to deactivate this object immediately.

Apply the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the *RunningStatus* attribute of the object is False, abort the behaviour. Otherwise:
- 2) Set the *RunningStatus* attribute of the object to False.
- 3) Generate an *IsStopped* event.

## 8.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class defines the following applicable MHEG-5 actions:

**GetAvailabilityStatus** (*AvailabilityStatusVar*) Set the Variable referenced by *AvailabilityStatusVar* to the value of the *AvailabilityStatus* attribute.

NOTE – A GetAvailabilityStatus action targeted to an object inexistant in the MHEG-5 engine is not an error; the result is False.

Provision of use:

- *AvailabilityStatusVar* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetAvailabilityStatus	-->	Target , AvailabilityStatusVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
AvailabilityStatusVar	-->	ObjectReference

**GetRunningStatus** (*RunningStatusVar*) Set the Variable referenced by *RunningStatusVar* to the value of the *RunningStatus* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be available.
- *RunningStatusVar* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetRunningStatus	-->	Target , RunningStatusVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
RunningStatusVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 8.5 Formal description

Root Class	-->	ObjectIdentifier
ObjectIdentifier	-->	ObjectReference

## 9 Group Class

Description: Defines the structure and behaviour of objects used as composition of Ingredients  
Base class: Root  
Subclasses: Scene, Application  
Status: Abstract class

## 9.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 9.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ObjectIdentifier	Root	This attribute is mandatory for this class. The Group Identifier part of this attribute is mandatory and shall be unique within the name space of the application domain. The Object Number part of this attribute shall be set to zero.

### 9.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

StandardIdentifier	This is an optional sequence of two Integers. When encoded: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>the first Integer shall always be set to 2, signifying «Joint ISO ITU»;</li><li>the second Integer shall always be set to 19, signifying MHEG.</li></ul>
StandardVersion	This is a single optional Integer. It defines the version of this Recommendation to which the Group objects, and all its Items, conform. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Optional Integer. If encoded, its value shall be 1.</li><li>Default value: 1.</li></ul>
ObjectInformation	This is an optional OctetString. When encoded, it shall hold information about the objects encoded in this Group. Such information may comprise information about object Name, Owner, Version, Date, Keywords, Copyright, License, and Comments.
OnStartUp	Set of elementary actions to run at the end of the <i>Activation</i> behaviour for the Group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Optional inclusion of an Action object.</li><li>Default value: None.</li></ul>
OnCloseDown	Set of elementary actions to run at the beginning of the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour for the Group. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Optional inclusion of an Action object.</li><li>Default value: None.</li></ul>

OriginalGroup- CachePriority	<p>Hint to the MHEG-5 engine regarding the relevance of caching this Group of Ingredients when it is destroyed.</p> <p>Value of the <i>GroupCachePriority</i> when the Group is prepared.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer within the range [0, 255].</li> <li>• Default value: 127.</li> <li>• Specific value: 0 means cache is not allowed for this Group and its Ingredients.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE – As specified in 4.2.2, caching of any kind is an optional feature of an MHEG-5 engine.</p>
Items	<p>Set of Ingredient objects that belong to the Group. When the Group contains no Ingredients, this attribute shall not be encoded. When this attribute is encoded, it shall contain at least one Ingredient.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Attribute.</li> <li>• Sequence of inclusions of Ingredient objects.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>

### 9.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following internal attribute:

<i>GroupCachePriority</i>	<p>Hint to the MHEG-5 engine regarding the relevance of caching this Group of Ingredients when it is destroyed.</p> <p>The <i>GroupCachePriority</i> may be compared with the <i>GroupCachePriority</i> of other Group objects to determine which of a number of groups has the highest likelihood of being required again by the application, once it has been destroyed. A higher value indicates a higher level of priority. It is the responsibility of the application designer to keep these numbers to a consistent range. The MHEG-5 engine is recommended to cache objects with higher priority in preference to objects with lower priority.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer within the range [0, 255].</li> <li>• Initial value: Value of the OriginalGroupCachePriority attribute.</li> <li>• Specific value: 0 means cache is not allowed for this Group and its Ingredients.</li> </ul>
---------------------------	---

## 9.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 9.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <i>Preparation</i>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour to all Ingredients of the Group that have the <i>InitiallyActive</i> attribute set to True and to all Programs of the Group that have the <i>InitiallyAvailable</i> attribute set to True in the order that they are listed in the <i>Items</i> attribute.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> </ol>  |
| <i>Destruction</i>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour to all Ingredients of the Group in the reverse order that they are listed in the <i>Items</i> attribute.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> </ol>  |
| <i>Activation</i>   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Activation</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> <li>2) Run the action contained in the <i>OnStartUp</i> attribute.</li> <li>3) Apply the <i>Activation</i> behaviour to all Ingredients of the Group that have the <i>InitiallyActive</i> attribute set to True, in the order they are listed in the <i>Items</i> attribute.</li> <li>4) Set the <i>RunningStatus</i> attribute of the Group object to True.</li> <li>5) Generate an <i>IsRunning</i> event.</li> </ol> |
| <i>Deactivation</i> | <p>If group is not active, ignore behaviour. If group is active, do the following three steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Run the action contained in the <i>OnCloseDown</i> attribute.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour to all active Ingredients of the Group, in the reverse order they are listed in the <i>Items</i> attribute.</li> <li>3) Apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> </ol>  |

### 9.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 action is defined:

**SetCachePriority** Set the *GroupCachePriority* attribute to *NewCachePriority*.

(*NewCachePriority*)

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be available.
- *NewCachePriority* shall be set within the range [0, 255].

Syntax description:

SetCachePriority	-->	Target ,
		NewCachePriority
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewCachePriority	-->	GenericInteger

## 9.5 Formal description

Group Class	-->	Root Class, StandardIdentifier?, StandardVersion?, ObjectInformation?, OnStartUp?, OnCloseDown?, OriginalGroupCachePriority?, Items?
StandardIdentifier	-->	Joint ISO ITU (2), MHEG (19)
StandardVersion	-->	INTEGER
ObjectInformation	-->	OctetString
OnStartUp	-->	Action Class
OnCloseDown	-->	Action Class
OriginalGroupCachePriority	-->	INTEGER
Items	-->	Item+
Item	-->	ResidentProgram Class   RemoteProgram Class   InterchangedProgram Class   Palette Class   Font Class   CursorShape Class   BooleanVariable Class   IntegerVariable Class   OctetStringVariable Class   ObjectRefVariable Class   ContentRefVariable Class   Link Class   Stream Class   Bitmap Class   LineArt Class   DynamicLineArt Class   Rectangle Class   Hotspot Class   SwitchButton Class   PushButton Class   Text Class   EntryField Class   HyperText Class   Slider Class   TokenGroup Class   ListGroup Class

## 10 Application Class

Description:	Defines a set of Ingredient objects, which are shared within an application scope
Base class:	Group
Subclasses:	None
Status:	Concrete class

### 10.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 10.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 10.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

**OnSpawnCloseDown** Action object to be executed when the Application is closed by opening another Application via the Spawn action. It may be useful for instance in order to store information that will be used when restarting this Application.

OnSpawnCloseDown may be invoked only by the Spawn action (see Spawn).

- Optional inclusion of an Action object.
- Default value: None.

**OnRestart** Action object to be executed when the Application is restarted. This may be useful, for instance, in order to retrieve information that was stored by OnSpawnCloseDown.

OnRestart may be invoked only by the Quit action (see Quit).

- Optional inclusion of an Action object.
- Default value: None.

**DefaultAttributes** Defines default attributes Application-wide that shall be used as default values when a corresponding Ingredient attribute is not specified. The following attribute defaults can be set:

**CharacterSet** Default character set, or set of character sets, for text rendering throughout the application, except when otherwise specified. This Integer shall be encoded with a value representing the set. The application domain shall define the range of CharacterSet and its semantics.

NOTE – The *CharacterSet* attribute of Application provides the initial character set for all objects containing text in the Application that do not specify it.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: None.

**BackgroundColour** Default colour to be used to render the background of a text object. This attribute is interpreted as a zero-based index in the colour look-up table defined by the *PaletteRef* attribute, or as a direct colour value, depending on the attribute type.

- Optional Integer or OctetString. An Integer will be interpreted as an index in a Palette; an OctetString will be interpreted as a direct colour value.
- Default value: «transparent».

**TextColour** Default colour to be used to render the foreground of a text object. This attribute is interpreted as a zero-based index in the colour look-up table defined by the *PaletteRef* attribute, or as a direct colour value, depending on the attribute type.

- Optional Integer or OctetString. An Integer will be interpreted as an index in a Palette; an OctetString will be interpreted as a direct colour value.
- Default value: Any colour.

**Font** Default font to use when presenting a Text object.

The *Font* attribute represents either a name for a font (which is resident in the MHEG-5 engine) or a reference to a Font object.

When no font reference is encoded in Application, the Text object is presented using a default font of the MHEG-5 engine.

- Optional attribute.
- OctetString representing a FontName, or reference to a Font object.
- Default value: Default font.

**FontAttributes** Default Font attributes such as style, character size, text colour and background colour.

The exact encoding format of the *FontAttributes* attribute is related to the value of the type of Font object mentioned by the *Font* attribute.

- Optional OctetString.
- Default value: No specific attribute set.

BitmapContentHook	<p>Default hook value for all Bitmap objects.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
StreamContentHook	<p>Default hook value for all Stream objects.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
TextContentHook	<p>Default hook value for all Text objects.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
LineArtContentHook	<p>Default hook value for all LineArt objects.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
Interchanged-ProgramContentHook	<p>Default hook value for all InterchangedProgram objects.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
ButtonRefColour	<p>Default ButtonColour colour for Button rendering.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer or OctetString.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
HighlightRefColour	<p>Default HighlightRefColour for Interactibles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer or OctetString.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
SliderRefColour	<p>Default SliderColour colour Slider rendering.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer or OctetString.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>

### 10.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

- LockCount* Specify whether or not the display screen is in a frozen state.
- When this attribute is positive and different from zero, the display shall not reflect any changes made to Visible objects that would normally result in a change in their rendering. However, all those changes shall be reflected at once as soon as the screen is unfrozen. The latter is signalled by the *LockCount* attribute being set to 0.
- Audio objects (of a Stream multiplex) will continue to play through a LockScreen action, i.e. they will continue to be heard.
- Visible objects that are part of a Stream multiplex shall continue to be played, but any other changes to these objects (e.g. position, volume, etc.) shall not be reflected until the screen is unfrozen; by continue to play is meant that they shall continue to move their *CounterPosition* attribute when the screen is locked, but, the updating of the graphical presentation of these objects during locked screen is optional. On some engines their physical rendering continues running, on some others the image is stopped until the screen is unlocked.
- When the screen unlocks, the rendering of the Visible objects shall be compliant with the value of the *CounterPosition* attribute.
- Integer greater than or equal to zero.
  - Initial value: 0.
- DisplayStack* Ordered list of references to Visible objects indicating how Visibles of the application are organised in graphics layers.
- Visibles at the bottom of the *DisplayStack* are displayed in the background of the screen and Visibles at the top of the *DisplayStack* are displayed in the foreground of the screen.
- Note that the *DisplayStack* may contain references to inactive Visible objects. In this case, inactive Visible objects simply do not appear on the screen but they remain as valid elements of the *DisplayStack*.
- Ordered list of ObjectReferences to Visible objects.
  - Initial value: Empty list.

## 10.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following event is defined:

- EngineEvent* This event is generated when a particular event has occurred in the environment of the MHEG-5 engine. This Recommendation does not specify any of these events; the application domain may specify the semantics of each of these events and the value of their associated data.
- Associated data: EventTag – Integer.

### 10.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Deactivation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *CloseConnection* action to all opened auxiliary connections.
- 2) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.

### 10.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

*StorePersistent* Request the MHEG-5 engine to save data in such a way that it may later be  
(*StoreSucceeded*, retrieved by the *ReadPersistent* action.

*InVariables*, Data to be saved is passed through a set of *Variables* referenced by the  
*OutFileName*) *InVariables* parameter. These variables may contain *Booleans*, *Integers*,  
*OctetStrings*, *ObjectReferences* and *ContentReferences*.

The data is saved in a file data structure. The *OutFileName* is another parameter of the *StorePersistent* action. This Recommendation does not define the nature, structure, ownership, protection or restriction of the file space. However, *StorePersistent* and *ReadPersistent* actions shall use the same file name space.

The effect of the *StorePersistent* action is synchronous. On the successful completion of the *StorePersistent* action, the *Variable* referenced by *StoreSucceeded* shall be set to *True*, otherwise to *False*.

Example: Consider the following elementary action included as part of the *OnSpawnCloseDown* attribute of an *Application*:

```
:StorePersistent (("myApp" 0) ("myApp" 1) ("scene1" 1) ("scene1" 2))  
"myfile.txt") ("myApp" 0) is the ObjectIdentifier of the current Application.  
("scene1" 1) and ("scene1" 2) are ObjectIdentifiers of variables that hold  
information relative to the current Application, e.g. user information. These  
data will be stored in file named "myfile.txt". The variable ("myApp" 1)  
refers to a Boolean indicating whether the elementary action succeeded or  
not.
```

Data may be recovered at the beginning or restart of this *Application* (or of another one) to avoid asking the user for the same information twice.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active *Application* object.
- *StoreSucceeded* shall refer to an active *BooleanVariable* object.
- *InVariables* shall be set to a non-empty list of references to active *Variable* objects of any type.

### Syntax description:

StorePersistent	-->	Target , StoreSucceeded , InVariables , OutFileName
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
StoreSucceeded	-->	ObjectReference
InVariables	-->	ObjectReference+
OutFileName	-->	GenericOctetString

ReadPersistent  
(*ReadSucceeded*,  
*OutVariables*,  
*InFileName*)

Request the MHEG-5 engine to read data that has been saved by the StorePersistent action.

Data to be read is recovered through a set of Variable objects, referenced by the parameter *OutVariables*.

The data has been stored in a file data structure. The *InFileName* is another parameter of the ReadPersistent action. This Recommendation does not define nature, structure, ownership, protection or restriction of the file space. However, StorePersistent and ReadPersistent actions shall use the same file name space.

The effect of the ReadPersistent action is synchronous. At successful completion of the ReadPersistent action, the Variable referenced by *ReadSucceeded* shall be set to True, otherwise to False.

Example: Consider the following elementary action as part of the *OnRestart* attribute of the Application:

```
:ReadPersistent ("myApp" 0) ("myApp" 1) ("scene1" 1) ("scene1" 2)  
"myfile.txt")
```

The content of the variables indicated by ("scene1" 1) and ("scene1" 2) will be set to the values read from the file "myfile.txt" when the Application is launched.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Application object.
- *ReadSucceeded* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.
- *OutVariables* shall be set to a non-empty list of references to active Variable objects.

Syntax description:

ReadPersistent	-->	Target , ReadSucceeded , OutVariables , InFileName
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ReadSucceeded ,	-->	ObjectReference
OutVariables	-->	ObjectReference+
InFileName	-->	GenericOctetString

Launch

Activate a new application by flushing the currently active one, if any.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour of the currently active Scene object, if any.
- 2) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour of the currently active Application object, if any.
- 3) Apply the *Activation* behaviour of the Application object to which the Launch action was targeted.

NOTE – Any events that are generated during the execution of these steps are queued and dealt with only after the entire sequence has ended.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be a non-available Application object.

Syntax description:

Launch	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Spawn

Activate a new application in such a way that the current application is restarted when the new application quits.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Execute the *OnSpawnCloseDown* Action of the currently active Application object.
- 2) Store the *GroupIdentifier* of the currently active Application on the application identifier stack, if any.
- 3) Execute the effect of the Launch action as described above.

The application identifier stack is an optional feature of an MHEG-5 engine. If it is not implemented, or if the application identifier stack is full, this action shall be implemented as the Launch action.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an Application object that is not currently active while there is currently an active Application object.

Syntax description:

Spawn	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Quit

Close an application and restart the previous application.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour of the currently active Scene object, if any.
- 2) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour of the target Application object.
- 3) If the MHEG-5 engine has not implemented an application identifier stack, or if the application identifier stack is empty, the MHEG-5 engine shall then return to an idle state. In all other cases, the following steps shall be performed:
- 4) Apply the *Activation* behaviour to the Application object whose Group Identifier is on the top of the application identifier stack. Note that this includes executing the *OnStartUp* Action of that object.
- 5) Remove the top entry from the application identifier stack.
- 6) Execute the *OnRestart* Action of the newly activated Application object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the currently active Application object.

Syntax description:

Quit	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

LockScreen

Freeze the display screen and prevent from reflecting changes to Visible objects.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Increment the internal attribute *LockCount* by 1.
- 2) If the *LockCount* attribute is now a strictly positive value, lock the display screen.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Application object.

Syntax description:

LockScreen	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

UnlockScreen

This action may refresh the display screen and reflect at once all changes to Visible objects.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Decrement the internal attribute *LockCount* by 1. If the result is less than zero, set the *LockCount* attribute to 0.
- 2) If the *LockCount* attribute is equal to 0, refresh the display screen.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Application object.

Syntax description:

UnlockScreen	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

OpenConnection  
(*OpenSucceeded*,  
*Protocol*, *Address*,  
*ConnectionTag*)

Attempt to open a connection with an entity outside the MHEG-5 engine.

The OpenConnection action has the following parameters:

*OpenSucceeded* If the OpenConnection action terminates successfully, the Variable referenced by *OpenSucceeded* shall be set to True, otherwise to False.

*Protocol* Identifier of the protocol to be used when establishing the connection.

*Address* Address of the counterpart with whom the connection should be made. The coding of this parameter depends on the value of the *Protocol*.

*ConnectionTag* Integer used to reference the connection within the application.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Application object.
- *OpenSucceeded* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

OpenConnection	-->	Target , OpenSucceeded , Protocol , Address , ConnectionTag
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
OpenSucceeded	-->	ObjectReference
Protocol	-->	GenericOctetString
Address	-->	GenericOctetString
ConnectionTag	-->	GenericInteger

CloseConnection  
(*ConnectionTag*)

Attempt to close a connection with an entity outside the MHEG-5 engine.

The CloseConnection action has the following parameters:

*ConnectionTag* Integer referencing a connection created by the OpenConnection action.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Application object.
- If the connection referenced by *ConnectionTag* is not properly established, the CloseConnection action is ignored.

Syntax description:

CloseConnection	-->	Target , ConnectionTag
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ConnectionTag	-->	GenericInteger

GetEngineSupport  
(*Feature, Answer*)

Return a Boolean that indicates if the MHEG-5 engine implements the specific option or set of options of this Recommendation. The result of this action is returned in a BooleanVariable referenced by the *Answer* parameter and may be used to adapt the behaviour of the application to the engine's capacities.

*Feature* is a string encoded by ISO/IEC 646 and describing the option or set of options. Strings allowed are defined below; additional strings may be defined by the application domain. These strings are case sensitive, and integers are to be substituted to the symbols N, W, H, X or Y in parenthesis.

The answer to each of these strings shall be True or False.

- *AncillaryConnections*  
asks whether engine supports ancillary point-to-point connections. These connections deal with the actions OpenConnection and CloseConnection, and the attribute ConnectionTag in various elementary actions.

- ApplicationStacking  
asks whether engine provides support for the Spawn action of the Application class.
- Cloning  
asks whether engine supports the Clone action.
- FreeMovingCursor  
asks whether engine provides support for the class CursorShape, for the events CursorEnter and CursorLeave, and for the actions GetCursorPosition, SetCursorPosition, and SetCursorShape.
- MultipleAudioStreams(N)  
asks whether engine supports at least N simultaneous Audio streams.
- MultipleRTGraphicsStreams(N)  
asks whether engine supports at least N simultaneous RTGraphics streams.
- MultipleVideoStreams(N)  
asks whether engine supports at least N simultaneous Video streams.
- OverlappingVisibles(N)  
asks whether engine supports at least N overlapping Visibles.
- Scaling  
asks whether engine supports ScaleBitmap and ScaleVideo actions.
- SceneAspectRatio(W,H)  
asks whether engine supports a given aspect ratio. W & H are two integers, W/H is the width/height aspect ratio.
- SceneCoordinateSystem(X,Y)  
asks whether engine supports a given coordinate system. X & Y are two integers defining the coordinate system.
- TrickModes  
asks whether engine supports trick modes for Streams.

Provisions of use:

- The GetEngineSupport action shall be targeted only to the active Application object.
- *Answer* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetEngineSupport	-->	Target ,
	-->	Feature ,
		Answer
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Feature	-->	GenericOctetString
Answer	-->	ObjectReference

## 10.5 Formal description

Application Class	-->	Group Class, OnSpawnCloseDown?, OnRestart? DefaultAttributes?
OnSpawnCloseDown	-->	Action Class
OnRestart	-->	Action Class
DefaultAttributes	-->	DefaultAttribute+
DefaultAttribute	-->	CharacterSet   BackgroundColour   TextColour   Font   FontAttributes   BitmapContentHook   InterchangedProgramContentHook   StreamContentHook   TextContentHook   LineArtContentHook   ButtonRefColour   HighlightRefColour   SliderRefColour
CharacterSet	-->	INTEGER
BackgroundColour	-->	Colour
TextColour	-->	Colour
Font	-->	OctetString   ObjectReference
FontAttributes	-->	OctetString
BitmapContentHook	-->	INTEGER
StreamContentHook	-->	INTEGER
TextContentHook	-->	INTEGER
LineArtContentHook	-->	INTEGER
InterchangedProgram- ContentHook	-->	INTEGER
ButtonRefColour	-->	Colour
HighlightRefColour	-->	Colour
SliderRefColour	-->	Colour

## 11 Scene Class

Description: Defines a set of Ingredient objects to be activated together

Base class: Group

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 11.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 11.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with identical semantics.

### 11.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

InputEventRegister	<p>Register of permissible UserInput events for this Scene.</p> <p>While this Scene is active, the MHEG-5 engine shall generate only UserInput events that have an associated data consistent with the content of this InputEventRegister.</p> <p>The contents of InputEventRegisters is not defined by this Recommendation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Integer identifying an InputEventRegister.</li></ul> <p>Example: One could define two InputEventRegisters: one dedicated to moving pointer input events (MouseClicked, etc.) and another one dedicated to remote control input events (Up, Down, Left, Right, Enter, Quit, etc.). Knowing which type of input events are expected by the scene will allow the MHEG-5 engine to use the physical user devices to generate such events.</p>
SceneCoordinate-System	<p>Size of the coordinate system of this Scene.</p> <p>This attribute is expressed in numbers of rows and columns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Two Integers, expressing x-scene and y-scene sizes.</li></ul>
AspectRatio	<p>Original aspect ratio of the Scene. This attribute is expressed by a width/height ratio.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional rational number.</li><li>• Default value: 4/3.</li></ul>
MovingCursor	<p>Indicate whether the Scene is expecting a free-moving cursor.</p> <p>Support by the MHEG-5 engine for free-moving cursors is optional. However, an application domain of MHEG-5 may declare such support to be mandatory. An engine that does not support free-moving cursors shall disregard this attribute. An engine that does support free-moving cursors shall act in the following way:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When this attribute is False, the engine shall not display a cursor on the screen.</li><li>• When this attribute is True, the engine shall display a cursor on the screen. The user shall be able to move this cursor to all positions within the Scene coordinate space. When the cursor enters (or leaves) the bounding box of an Interactable object, a CursorEnter (CursorLeave) event shall be generated for that Interactable. The engine shall support the SetCursorPosition and GetCursorPosition actions.</li></ul>

The following applies to this attribute in general:

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: False.

**NextScenes** An optional list of OctetStrings, which shall be interpreted as GroupIdentifiers of Scene objects that might be presented after this one, along with a weight factor measuring the likelihood that these scenes are actually presented. The weight factor shall be an Integer in the range [0, 255] with 255 indicating the highest likelihood. It may be used by the MHEG-5 engine to resolve caching or pre-loading conflicts.

### 11.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

**Timers** List of timers representing the temporal positions where the Scene shall receive *TimerFired* events.

Each timer has a unique identity number within the *Timers* list and a temporal position expressed in milliseconds. The temporal position is measured from the time origin of the timer. A timer shall be created by executing the SetTimer action on the active Scene. The time origin of the timer is by default the position in time where the SetTimer action, that created this timer, is executed; however, if the AbsoluteTime Boolean is encoded and set to True, the time origin of the timer is the position in time where the *IsRunning* event of the scene is generated.

- Sequence of the following data structures:
  - Timer identifier: Integer
  - Timer position: Integer
  - AbsoluteTime: Optional Boolean, default: False.
- Initial value: Empty sequence.

## 11.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following events are defined:

**UserInput** This event shall be generated by the MHEG-5 engine to indicate that user input has occurred.

- Associated data: UserInputEventTag – Integer. The value of the Associated Data shall be consistent with the content of the InputEventRegister attribute.

**TimerFired** This event is generated when a timer has fired.

- Associated data: TimerIdentifier – Integer.

### 11.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 11.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**TransitionTo**  
(*ConnectionTag*,  
*TransitionEffect*)

Check that target scene is different from active scene. If it is not, ignore action; if it is, remove the active Scene from the screen and replace it with the target Scene as follows.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour to all active Ingredient objects of the currently active Application object that have the Shared parameter set to False in the reverse order that they are listed in the Items attribute of the application object.
- 2) Apply the *Deactivation* and *Destruction* behaviours to the Scene object currently active, if any. (This starts the transition effect.)
- 3) Apply the *Preparation* behaviour to the Scene object to which the TransitionTo action was targeted.
- 4) Apply the *Activation* behaviour to the Scene object to which the TransitionTo action was targeted. (This stops the transition effect.) The timeline for the new scene starts after generation of the *IsRunning* event.

This action has an optional parameter called *ConnectionTag*. If this parameter is not encoded, the Scene reference shall be resolved within the name space of the active Application object.

If the *ConnectionTag* parameter is encoded, the reference to the target Scene and all ContentReferences made from the target Scene shall be resolved within a name space that is used for communication over a communication link with the tag *ConnectionTag* (see the action OpenConnection in the Application class).

In addition, this action has a *TransitionEffect* parameter, which determines what type of visual transition effect to be implemented when performing the TransitionTo action. Implementing any transition effect is optional for the MHEG-5 engine. The encoding of the TransitionEffect attribute has to be specified by the application domain.

NOTE – For some transition effects, the engine may be required to handle the *Destruction* behaviour of Visibles differently from other deactivation (not introduced by TransitionTo). For example, the visual representation of the current scene may be saved in the graphical subsystem for a wipe or push effect, where the first scene is smoothly replaced by the second.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be a non-available Scene object.

Syntax description:

TransitionTo	-->	Target , ConnectionTag? , TransitionEffect?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ConnectionTag	-->	GenericInteger
TransitionEffect	-->	GenericInteger

SetTimer  
(*TimerId*,  
*TimerValue*,  
*AbsoluteTime*)

Update the list of timers of the Scene.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Update the *Timers* internal attribute of the Scene, according to the following rules:
  - a) If *TimerId* is the identifier of an existing Timer in the Scene, the new *TimerValue* replaces the previous one. The parameter *AbsoluteTime* is ignored; in other words, an absolute Timer cannot be replaced by a Timer relative to the Scene.
  - b) If there is no Timer with identifier *TimerId* in the Scene, insert a new Timer with identifier *TimerId* and values *TimerValue* and *AbsoluteTime* in the Scene. If *AbsoluteTime* is not encoded, it is set to False by default.
  - c) If *TimerValue* is not encoded and there is a Timer with identifier *TimerId* in the Scene, remove this Timer from the *Timers* list.
  - d) If *TimerValue* is not encoded and there is no Timer with identifier *TimerId* in the *Timers* list, discard this action.
- 2) The active Scene shall receive *TimerFired* events according to the new value of the *Timers* list.

If *AbsoluteTime* is set to True, the *TimerValue* parameter of this action shall be interpreted as a time offset from the time when the Scene is active. Otherwise, the *TimerValue* parameter of this action shall be interpreted as a time offset from the time when the action is invoked. In both cases, it is measured in milliseconds.

If the *TimerValue* parameter is zero and *AbsoluteTime* is False, the Timer shall be fired immediately.

Removing or changing a Timer does not suppress pending events from the former Timer.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Scene object.

Syntax description:

SetTimer	-->	Target , TimerId, TimerValue? , AbsoluteTime?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
TimerId	-->	GenericInteger
TimerValue	-->	GenericInteger
AbsoluteTime	-->	GenericBoolean

SendEvent  
(*EmulatedEvent-Source*,  
*EmulatedEvent-Type*,  
*EmulatedEvent-Data*)

Force the occurrence of an event.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Generate an event corresponding to *EmulatedEventType*, *EmulatedEventSource* and *EmulatedEventData* as if it has been generated in the normal way.
- 2) Store this event in the synchronous or asynchronous event queue, according to *EmulatedEventType*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Scene object.
- *EmulatedEventSource* shall refer to an MHEG-5 object compatible with *EmulatedEventType*.
- *EmulatedEventData* shall be either a direct value, or a reference to an active Variable object of a type compatible with the associated data of *EmulatedEventType*.

Syntax description:

SendEvent	-->	Target , EmulatedEventSource , EmulatedEventType , EmulatedEventData?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
EmulatedEventSource	-->	GenericObjectReference
EmulatedEventType	-->	IsAvailable   ContentAvailable   IsDeleted   IsRunning   IsStopped   UserInput   AnchorFired   TimerFired   AsynchStopped   InteractionCompleted   TestEvent   TokenMovedFrom   TokenMovedTo   FirstItemPresented   LastItemPresented   HeadItems   TailItems   ItemSelected   ItemDeselected   StreamEvent   StreamPlaying   StreamStopped   CounterTrigger   HighlightOn   HighlightOff   CursorEnter   CursorLeave   IsSelected   IsDeselected   EntryFieldFull
EmulatedEventData	-->	GenericBoolean   GenericInteger   GenericOctetString

SetCursorShape  
(*NewCursorShape*)

Set the shape of the free moving cursor.

This action shall have an effect only if the free-moving cursor option is implemented by the MHEG-5 engine.

If the *NewCursorShape* parameter is not encoded, the cursor is removed from the Scene.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Scene object.
- *NewCursorShape* shall refer to an active *CursorShape* object.

Syntax description:

SetCursorShape	-->	Target , NewCursorShape?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewCursorShape	-->	GenericObjectReference

SetCursorPosition  
(*XCursor*, *YCursor*)

Set the position of the free moving cursor.

This action shall have an effect only if the free-moving cursor option is implemented by the MHEG-5 engine.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the position of the cursor pointer within the coordinate space of the Scene.
- 2) Generate *CursorLeave* and *CursorEnter* events if Interactable objects are affected by the effect of this action.

If an Interactable B overlaps another one A, a SetCursorPosition from a point in A (not in B) to a point within the overlapping area shall generate a *CursorLeave(A)* and a *CursorEnter(B)*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Scene object.
- *Xcursor* and *YCursor* shall correspond to a location within the rectangle defined by the SceneCoordinateSystem attribute of the active Scene.

Syntax description:

SetCursorPosition	-->	Target , XCursor , YCursor
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Xcursor	-->	GenericInteger
Ycursor	-->	GenericInteger

GetCursorPosition  
(*XOut*, *YOut*)

Set the Variables referenced by *XOut* and *YOut* to the location of the free moving cursor within the coordinate space of the Scene.

This action shall have an effect only if the free-moving cursor option is implemented by the MHEG-5 engine.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be the active Scene object.
- *Xout* and *YOut* shall refer to active IntegerVariable objects.

Syntax description:

GetCursorPosition	-->	Target , XOut , YOut
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Xout	-->	ObjectReference
Yout	-->	ObjectReference

## 11.5 Formal description

Scene Class	-->	Group Class, InputEventRegister, SceneCoordinateSystem, AspectRatio?, MovingCursor?, NextScenes?
InputEventRegister	-->	INTEGER
SceneCoordinateSystem	-->	XScene, YScene
XScene,	-->	INTEGER
Yscene	-->	INTEGER
AspectRatio	-->	Width, Height
Width	-->	INTEGER
Height	-->	INTEGER
MovingCursor	-->	BOOLEAN
NextScenes	-->	NextScene+
NextScene	-->	SceneRef, SceneWeight
SceneRef	-->	OctetString
SceneWeight	-->	INTEGER

## 12 Ingredient Class

Description: Defines the functionality associated with classes that make up Scenes and Applications

Base class: Root

Subclasses: Link, Program, Palette, Font, CursorShape, Variable, Presentable

Status: Abstract class

### 12.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 12.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ObjectIdentifier	Root	The ObjectNumber part of this attribute shall be unique within the group this object belongs to and shall not be 0. If the GroupIdentifier is encoded, it shall be set to the GroupIdentifier of the group this object belongs to.

### 12.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

InitiallyActive	<p>This parameter is used to determine which objects in a Scene or an Application are initially active.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional Boolean.</li><li>• Default value: True.</li></ul>
ContentHook	<p>Determine the encoding format of the data included or referenced by the <i>Content</i> attribute.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional Integer.</li><li>• Default value: Depending on subclasses, the value encoded by Application in one of the following attributes: BitmapContentHook, LineArtContentHook, InterchangedProgramContentHook, StreamContentHook and TextContentHook.</li></ul>
OriginalContent	<p>Value of the <i>Content</i> internal attribute at preparation.</p> <p>This attribute contains either included data or a reference to an external data source.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• OriginalContent is an optional attribute.</li><li>• Data type: ReferencedContent or IncludedContent.</li><li>• Default value: None.</li></ul> <p>Included data is encoded directly within an OctetString.</p> <p>A reference to an external data source is composed of:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) a ContentReference, which is an OctetString referencing an external piece of data.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Data type: OctetString.</li></ul></li><li>2) an optional ContentSize, which represents the size in bytes of the external source. This attribute might be used by the MHEG-5 engine to determine how many resources are requested to render the Ingredient. It is the responsibility of the application to ensure the compatibility of the ContentSize attribute with the actual size of the external source of data.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ContentSize is an optional attribute.</li><li>• Data type: Integer.</li><li>• Default value: None.</li></ul></li></ol> <p>Example: Consider a Bitmap object whose OriginalContent attribute is set to a reference to an external data file. Its ContentSize attribute should contain an estimation of the size of the external data.</p>

- 3) an optional `ContentCachePriority`, which represents the relevance of caching this external data source. This attribute might be compared by the MHEG-5 engine to other `ContentCachePriority` attributes to determine which external data source has the highest priority of being required again by the application. A higher value indicates a higher level of priority. It is the responsibility of the application to keep these priorities to a consistent range. The MHEG-5 engine is recommended to cache external data sources with higher priority in preference to data sources with lower priority.
  - `ContentCachePriority` is an optional attribute.
  - Data type: Integer within the range [0, 255].
  - Default value: 127.
  - Specific value: 0 means caching is not allowed for external content data referenced by this Ingredient.

## Shared

Indicate whether the Ingredient object is intended for continuous presentation across a Scene transition. This is used to prevent destroying objects that are used in consecutive scenes. Specifically, when a `TransitionTo` action is targeted to a Scene *B* while Scene *A* is active, all active ingredients of the active Application object are automatically deactivated except those that have the `Shared` attribute set to `True`.

Provision of use:

- If the Ingredient object is an item of a Scene or of a Template, `Shared` shall not be encoded.

Synopsis:

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: `False`.

### 12.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

#### *Content*

This attribute contains either included data or a reference to an external data source.

Included data is encoded directly within an `OctetString`.

A reference to an external data source is composed of:

- 1) a `ContentReference`, which is an `OctetString` referencing an external piece of data.
  - Data type: `OctetString`.
  - Initial value: `ContentSize` of `OriginalContent` attribute.
- 2) an optional `ContentSize`, which represents the size in bytes of the external source.
  - `ContentSize` is an optional attribute.
  - Data type: Integer.
  - Initial value: `ContentSize` of `OriginalContent` attribute.

- 3) an optional *ContentCachePriority*, which represents the relevance of caching this external data source.
  - *ContentCachePriority* is an optional attribute.
  - Data type: Integer within the range [0, 255].
  - Initial value: *ContentCachePriority* of *OriginalContent* attribute.
  - Specific value: 0 means caching is not allowed for external content data referenced by this *Ingredient*.

The *Content* attribute shall not be defined for classes specifying that *OriginalContent* shall not be encoded.

- Optional attribute.
- Data type: *ReferencedContent* or *IncludedContent*.
- Initial value: Value of *OriginalContent*.

## 12.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 12.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

<i>Destruction</i>	Execute the following sequence of actions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) If the <i>Content</i> attribute is set to a reference to external data source and if <i>ContentCachePriority</i> is set to 0, the MHEG-5 engine shall free all resources allocated to the external content data of the <i>Ingredient</i>.</li> <li>2) If the <i>Content</i> attribute is set to a reference to external data source and if <i>ContentCachePriority</i> is different from 0, the MHEG-5 engine may free all resources allocated to the external content data of the <i>Ingredient</i>, or cache it.</li> <li>3) Apply the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour as inherited from the <i>Root</i> class.</li> </ol>
--------------------	--

## 12.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

<i>SetData</i> ( <i>NewContent</i> )	Set the <i>Content</i> attribute of the target <i>Ingredient</i> to <i>NewContent</i> . Provisions of use: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The <i>Target</i> object shall be an available <i>Ingredient</i> object.</li> <li>• The <i>ContentHook</i> of the target <i>Ingredient</i> object shall be encoded.</li> <li>• Data included or referenced by <i>NewContent</i> shall have the encoding format determined by <i>ContentHook</i> of the target <i>Ingredient</i>.</li> </ul>
---	--

- If *Content* is currently set to included data, *NewContent* shall be set or refer to included data.
- If *Content* is currently set to a reference to an external data source, then *NewContent* shall be set or refer to a reference to an external data source.

**Syntax description:**

SetData	-->	Target , NewContent
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewContent	-->	NewIncludedContent   NewReferencedContent
NewIncludedContent	-->	GenericOctetString
NewReferencedContent	-->	NewContentReference , NewContentSize? , NewContentCachePriority?
NewContentReference	-->	GenericContentReference
NewContentSize	-->	GenericInteger
NewContentCachePriority	-->	GenericInteger

**Clone  
(CloneRefVar)**

If the engine supports the Cloning option, the effect of this action is described below. Engines that do not support the Cloning option shall ignore this action.

This action copies the *Target* adding the copy to the same group that contains the *Target* using a unique *ObjectReference* obtained from the engine. The *ObjectReference* referring to the copy is returned in the *ObjectRefVariable* referenced by *CloneRefVar*.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Determine a unique *ObjectReference* within the same group as the *Target*.
- 2) Create a copy of the *Target*, taking into account only the exchanged attributes and not the internal attributes. The *ObjectIdentifier* attribute inherited from the Root class is not copied, but set to the *ObjectReference* determined in step 1.
- 3) Add the copy to the group containing the *Target* object.
- 4) Set the *ObjectRefVariable* referenced by *CloneRefVar* to the *ObjectReference* determined in step 1.
- 5) Apply the *Preparation* behaviour to the copy.

An object created using this action is deactivated/destroyed when the group that contains that object is deactivated/destroyed. The objects are deactivated/destroyed along with other static *Ingredients* in the reverse order of creation. A dynamically created *Ingredient* can also be destroyed using the *Unload* elementary action if its *Content* attribute is not Null.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Ingredient.
- *CloneRefVar* shall be an active ObjectRefVariable.

Syntax description:

Clone	-->	Target , CloneRefVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
CloneRefVar	-->	ObjectReference

Preload

Prepare an Ingredient and provide a hint to the MHEG-5 engine to prepare the content data of an Ingredient for future use.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Preparation* behaviour.
- 2) The MHEG-5 engine may optionally retrieve and/or decode the content data associated with the target Ingredient object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be non-available Ingredient object.
- The *Content* attribute of the target Ingredient shall be different from Null.

Syntax description:

Preload	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Unload

Destroy an Ingredient and provide a hint to the MHEG-5 engine to free resources allocated to an Ingredient.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available and inactive Ingredient object.
- The *Content* attribute of the target Ingredient shall be different from Null.

Syntax description:

Unload	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 12.5 Formal description

Ingredient Class	--> Root Class, InitiallyActive?, ContentHook?, OriginalContent?, Shared?
InitiallyActive	--> BOOLEAN
ContentHook	--> INTEGER
OriginalContent	--> IncludedContent   ReferencedContent
IncludedContent	--> OctetString
ReferencedContent	--> ContentReference, ContentSize?, ContentCachePriority?
ContentSize	--> INTEGER
ContentCachePriority	--> INTEGER
Shared	--> BOOLEAN

## 13 Link Class

Description: Defines the functionality associated with reacting to events by performing a sequence of elementary actions

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 13.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 13.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 13.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

LinkCondition      The *LinkCondition* consists of an *EventSource*, an *EventType* and an *EventData*.

When an event emanates from an object, the MHEG-5 engine shall fire a specific Link if and only if:

- the Link is active;
- the EventSource is equal to the object reference of the object from which the event emanated (the GroupIdentifier defaults to the GroupIdentifier of the Group in which the Link itself is included);
- the EventType is equal to the type of event that occurred; and
- *either*, the EventData is equal to the data value provided with the event, *or* the EventData is not encoded.

NOTE – The type of data passed with each event is described in clause 53. The firing of a Link object leads to the execution of its LinkEffect.

LinkEffect

Inclusion of an Action object.

When the Link fires, the elementary actions within this Action object are executed in synchronous order.

### 13.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 13.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 13.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Activation*

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Activation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.
- 2) Make the Link object receptive to events that fulfil its LinkCondition.
- 3) Set the *RunningStatus* of the Link to True.
- 4) Generate an *IsRunning* event.

*Deactivation*

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Put the Link object in an inactive state so that it is not receptive to events.
- 2) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.

### 13.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

Activate

Make a Link receptive to events that meet its LinkCondition.

Execute the following actions:

- 1) If the target Link object is active, disregard this action.

- 2) If the target Link is inactive, apply the *Activation* behaviour of the Link object.

Syntax description:

Activate	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Deactivate

Make a Link not receptive to events.

Execute the following actions:

- 1) If the target Link object is inactive, disregard this action.
- 2) If the target Link is active, apply the *Deactivation* behaviour of the Link object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Link object.

Syntax description:

Deactivate	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 13.5 Formal description

Link Class	-->	Ingredient Class, LinkCondition, LinkEffect
LinkCondition	-->	EventSource, EventType, EventData?
LinkEffect	-->	Action Class
EventSource	-->	ObjectReference
EventType	-->	IsAvailable   ContentAvailable   IsDeleted   IsRunning   IsStopped   UserInput   AnchorFired   TimerFired   AsynchStopped   InteractionCompleted   TestEvent   TokenMovedFrom   TokenMovedTo   FirstItemPresented   LastItemPresented   HeadItems   TailItems   ItemSelected   ItemDeselected   StreamEvent   StreamPlaying   StreamStopped   CounterTrigger   HighlightOn   HighlightOff   CursorEnter   CursorLeave   IsSelected   IsDeselected   EntryFieldFull   EngineEvent
EventData	-->	OctetString   BOOLEAN   INTEGER

## 14 Program Class

Description: Defines means to handle execution of external pieces of procedural code  
Base class: Ingredient  
Subclasses: RemoteProgram, ResidentProgram, InterchangedProgram  
Status: Abstract class

### 14.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 14.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
InitiallyActive	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class and shall be set to False.

#### 14.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

Name Name of the external procedural code to be called when the Program object is activated.  
The mapping of Name to the actual name of the external procedural code is not defined by this Recommendation.

- OctetString.

InitiallyAvailable This parameter is used to determine which Programs in a Scene or an Application are initially prepared.

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: True.

#### 14.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 14.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following event is defined:

*AsynchStopped* This event shall be generated when a Program object, that is executed via the Fork action, has terminated its execution.

- No associated data.

### 14.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

- Activation*
- 1) If not done during preparation, locate the external procedural code by using the Name attribute.
  - 2) If the external procedural code is not found, disregard this action. Otherwise:
  - 3) Set the parameters of the external procedural code of the Program as indicated by *Parameters*.
  - 4) Apply the *Activation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.
  - 5) Start execution of the external procedural code synchronously or asynchronously according to the action invoking the execution.
  - 6) Set the *RunningStatus* attribute to True.
  - 7) Generate an *IsRunning* event.

- Deactivation*
- If the *RunningStatus* attribute is False, ignore this action. Otherwise, execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) Force the end of execution of the Program.
  - 2) Apply *Deactivation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.
- NOTE – The *Deactivation* behaviour generates an *IsStopped* event, as defined in Root.

### 14.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

- SetData*
- This action shall not be applied to an object of any subclasses of the Program class.
- Call*  
(*CallSucceeded*,  
*Parameters*)
- Request execution of an external piece of procedural code and wait for the end of execution.
- Execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) If the Program is non-available, apply the *Preparation* behaviour.
  - 2) If the Program is active, disregard this action. Otherwise:
  - 3) Apply the *Activation* behaviour.
  - 4) Wait for the execution of the external procedural code to finish. If the Program finishes abnormally, set the Variable referenced by *CallSucceeded* to False; otherwise, set it to True.
  - 5) Set the value of the Variables referenced by *Parameters* to the values returned by the Program (these may be invalid if *CallSucceeded* is False).
  - 6) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour.

Provisions of use:

- *CallSucceeded* shall be set to an active BooleanVariable object.
- *Parameters* shall be set to a list of values corresponding to the expected parameters of the external procedural code. The order of the *Parameters* list shall correspond to the order of parameters of the procedural code. Parameters passed by value shall be set directly to the corresponding value. Parameters passed by reference shall be passed via active Variable objects of the corresponding data type.

Syntax description:

Call	-->	Target , CallSucceeded , Parameters?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
CallSucceeded	-->	ObjectReference
Parameters	-->	Parameter+
Parameter	-->	GenericBoolean   GenericInteger   GenericOctetString   GenericObjectReference   GenericContentReference

Fork  
(*ForkSucceeded*,  
*Parameters*)

Request execution of an external piece of procedural code without waiting for the end of execution.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Program is non-available, apply the *Preparation* behaviour.
- 2) If the Program is active, disregard this action. Otherwise:
- 3) Apply the *Activation* behaviour.
- 4) Pass control back to the MHEG-5 engine without waiting for the execution of the external procedural code to finish.

When the execution of the external procedural code finishes, execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Program finishes abnormally, set the Variable referenced by *ForkSucceeded* to False; otherwise, set it to True.
- 2) Set the value of the Variables referenced by *Parameters* to the values returned by the Program (these may be invalid if *ForkSucceeded* is False).
- 3) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour.
- 4) Generate an *AsynchStopped* event.

NOTE – Parameters may be modified by the Program; in that case, these parameters are not defined until the Program is normally finished, that is until an *AsynchStopped* is generated.

Provisions of use:

- *ForkSucceeded* shall be set to an active BooleanVariable object.
- *Parameters* shall be set to a list of values corresponding to the expected parameters of the external procedural code. The order of the *Parameters* list shall correspond to the order of parameters of the procedural code. Parameters passed by value shall be set directly to the corresponding value. Parameters passed by reference shall be passed via active Variable objects of the corresponding data type.

Syntax description:

Fork	-->	Target , ForkSucceeded , Parameters?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ForkSucceeded	-->	ObjectReference
Parameters	-->	Parameter+
Parameter	-->	GenericBoolean   GenericInteger   GenericOctetString   GenericObjectReference   GenericContentReference

Stop

Interrupt the execution of an external piece of procedural code.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Program is inactive, disregard this action. Otherwise:
- 2) Apply the *Deactivation* behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Program object.

Syntax description:

Stop	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 14.5 Formal description

Program Class	-->	Ingredient Class , Name , InitiallyAvailable?
Name	-->	
InitiallyAvailable	-->	BOOLEAN

## 15 ResidentProgram Class

Description: Defines means to handle calls to locally executed external procedural code  
A ResidentProgram object provides an interface to a piece of procedural code that is local to the device on which the MHEG-5 engine is running. This Recommendation does not specify a naming paradigm for such a procedural interface nor the internal semantics of calling such a Program.

Base class: Program

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 15.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 15.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 15.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attributes.

#### 15.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 15.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 15.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 15.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 15.5 Formal description

ResidentProgram Class --> Program Class
---

## 16 RemoteProgram Class

Description: Defines means to handle calls to remotely executed procedural code

A RemoteProgram object provides an interface to a piece of procedural code that is to be run at a location outside the device on which the MHEG-5 engine is running. The location of the remote Program object is provided by means of the ProgramConnectionTag attribute.

Base class: Program

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 16.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 16.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 16.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

ProgramConnectionTag Tag of the connection used to locate the remote procedural code to be called when the Program object is activated. ProgramConnectionTag is an identifier of a connection opened by the OpenConnection action of the Application class.

ProgramConnectionTag is optional. When it is not encoded, the external procedural code is located relatively to the default name space of the application.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: None.

#### 16.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 16.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 16.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Activation* 1) If not done during preparation, locate the remote external procedural code by using the Name and ProgramConnectionTag attributes.

- 2) If the remote external procedural code is not found, disregard this action. Otherwise:
- 3) Apply the *Activation* behaviour as inherited from the base class.

## 16.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 16.5 Formal description

RemoteProgram Class	-->	Program Class, ProgramConnectionTag?
ProgramConnectionTag	-->	INTEGER

## 17 InterchangedProgram Class

**Description:** Defines means to handle program code interchanged as the OriginalContent of an InterchangedProgram object and executed or interpreted on the same device as the MHEG-5 engine

This Recommendation does not specify how the procedural code is executed or interpreted on the device on which the MHEG-5 engine is running.

**Base class:** Program

**Subclasses:** None

**Status:** Concrete class

### 17.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 17.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	Either this attribute or its corresponding default attribute in the Application class (InterchangedProgramContentHook) is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.

#### 17.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 17.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 17.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 17.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 17.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 17.5 Formal description

InterchangedProgram Class --> Program Class
---

## 18 Palette Class

Description: Defines a class to represent a colour look-up table

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 18.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 18.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
InitiallyActive	Ingredient	If encoded, this attribute shall be set to True for this class.

#### 18.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 18.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 18.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 18.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 18.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 18.5 Formal description

Palette Class	-->	Ingredient Class
---------------	-----	------------------

## 19 Font Class

Description: Defines a class to represent a character font used for rendering text objects

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 19.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 19.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
InitiallyActive	Ingredient	If encoded, this attribute shall be set to True for this class.

#### 19.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 19.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 19.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 19.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 19.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 19.5 Formal description

Font Class	-->	Ingredient Class
------------	-----	------------------

## 20 CursorShape Class

Description: Defines encapsulation for the data structures used to represent a free-moving cursor

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 20.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 20.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.
InitiallyActive	Ingredient	If encoded, this attribute shall be set to True for this class.

#### 20.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 20.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 20.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 20.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 20.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 20.5 Formal description

CursorShape Class --> Ingredient Class
--

## 21 Variable Class

Description: Defines a variable within the context of a Group object

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: BooleanVariable, IntegerVariable, OctetStringVariable, ObjectReferenceVariable, ContentRefVariable

Status: Abstract class

## 21.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 21.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
InitiallyActive	Ingredient	If encoded, this attribute shall be set to True for this class.

### 21.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

*OriginalValue*            Value of the variable when it is first prepared.

The *OriginalValue* attribute shall be of one of these types: Boolean, Integer, OctetString, ObjectReference, or ContentReference.

### 21.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Value*                    Current value of the variable.

The *Value* attribute may be of one of these types: Boolean, Integer, OctetString, ObjectReference, or ContentReference. The only elementary action that may modify this attribute is the SetVariable action.

- Initial value: Value of the OriginalValue attribute.

## 21.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following event is defined:

*TestEvent*                This event shall be generated by the MHEG-5 engine to indicate that a subclass of Variable has been tested.

- Associated data: Boolean. The result of the comparison between the variable and the parameter from the TestVariable action.

## 21.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Activation*                Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Activation* behaviour as defined in the base class.
- 2) Set the *RunningStatus* attribute to True and generate an *IsRunning* event.

## 21.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

SetVariable  
(NewVariableValue)

Set the *Value* attribute of the *Target* object to *NewVariableValue*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active object of one of the following classes: BooleanVariable, IntegerVariable, OctetStringVariable, ObjectRefVariable or ContentRefVariable.
- *NewVariableValue* shall be set or refer to a value that is not necessarily of the same type as the current *Value* attribute of the target Variable. When *NewVariableValue* and the *Target* object are of two different types, *NewVariableValue* is automatically converted into the class type of Target.

NOTE – More details on conversions are given in subclauses relevant to each Variable subclass.

Syntax description:

SetVariable	-->	Target , NewVariableValue
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewVariableValue	-->	GenericInteger   GenericBoolean   GenericOctetString   GenericObjectReference   GenericContentReference

TestVariable  
(Target, Operator,  
ComparisonValue)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Compare the *Value* of the variable to the ComparisonValue parameter. The Variable value is the first operand, the ComparisonValue parameter is the second operand of the comparison.
- 2) Generate the corresponding TestEvent.
  - Source: Target of TestVariable.
  - Associated data: Boolean.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active object of one of the following classes: BooleanVariable, IntegerVariable, OctetStringVariable, ObjectRefVariable or ContentRefVariable.
- The ComparisonValue shall be of corresponding type (GenericBoolean, GenericInteger, GenericOctetString, GenericObjectReference and GenericContentReference respectively). No implicit type conversion is allowed.
- When values are Integer, the Operator shall be an integer in the range 1 to 6 with the following meaning:  
1 means equal, 2 not equal,

3 strictly less than, 4 less than or equal to,

5 strictly greater than, 6 greater than or equal to.

- When values are Boolean, OctetString, ObjectReference or ContentReference, the Operator shall be an integer in the range 1 to 2 with the following meaning:

1 means equal, 2 not equal.

Syntax description:

TestVariable	-->	Target , Operator , ComparisonValue
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ComparisonValue	-->	GenericInteger   GenericBoolean   GenericOctetString   GenericObjectReference   GenericContentReference
Operator	-->	GenericInteger

## 21.5 Formal description

Variable Class	-->	Ingredient Class , OriginalValue
OriginalValue	-->	BOOLEAN   INTEGER   OctetString   ObjectReference   ContentReference

## 22 BooleanVariable Class

Description: Defines a variable of type Boolean within the context of a Group object

Base class: Variable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 22.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 22.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with no additional constraints.

#### 22.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

OriginalValue The OriginalValue attribute shall be a Boolean.

### 22.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Value* • The *Value* attribute shall be a Boolean.

### 22.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 22.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 22.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 action is defined:

SetVariable Provision of use:

(*NewVariableValue*) • The *NewVariableValue* shall be a GenericBoolean.

### 22.5 Formal description

BooleanVariable Class --> Variable Class
--

## 23 IntegerVariable Class

Description: Defines a variable of type Integer within the context of a Group object

Base class: Variable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 23.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 23.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with no additional constraints.

#### 23.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

OriginalValue The OriginalValue attribute shall be an Integer.

#### 23.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Value* The *Value* attribute shall be an Integer.

### 23.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 23.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 23.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

- SetVariable  
(*NewVariableValue*)
- Provision of use:
- The *NewVariableValue* shall be of one of the following types: Integer or OctetString.
    - When the *NewVariableValue* is of type Integer, the value of the Target variable is set to the value of *NewVariableValue*.
    - When the *NewVariableValue* is of type OctetString, it is first converted to an Integer, then value of the Target variable is set to that Integer value.

Rules for conversion:

- 1) OctetString conversion shall make use of the Application CharacterSet attribute. If several character sets are listed, conversion is made on characters as long as they are "numeric" in their code set.
- 2) Conversion shall consider that the OctetString represents the Integer in base 10.
- 3) OctetString conversion shall be made on the first numeric characters (in ISO/IEC 646: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9) and shall stop as soon as a non-numeric character is encountered [with exception of the minus sign in first position, as detailed in rule 4) below]. For instance an OctetString representing "123abc" will be converted into the Integer 123.
- 4) Minus sign is allowed as first character of an OctetString. For instance OctetString representing "-123" will be converted into Integer -123, but "12-345" will be converted into Integer 12 according to rule 3).

Add  
(*Value*)

Add *Target* Variable to *Value*. Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

Add	-->	Target , Value
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Value	-->	GenericInteger

Subtract  
(*Value*)

Subtract *Value* from *Target* Variable. Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

Subtract	-->	Target , Value
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Value	-->	GenericInteger

Multiply  
(*Value*)

Multiply *Target* Variable by *Value*. Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

Multiply	-->	Target , Value
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Value	-->	GenericInteger

Divide  
(*Value*)

Divide *Target* Variable by *Value*. Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable. When the result is not an integer value, rounding is made towards 0.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

Divide	-->	Target , Value
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Value	-->	GenericInteger

Modulo  
(*Value*)

Return the remainder modulo *Value* of *Target* – as defined by usual integer arithmetic rules, that is to say that for any integers a and b the following equality is satisfied:

$$(a \text{ DIV } b) \times b + (a \text{ MOD } b) = a.$$

Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

Modulo	-->	Target , Value
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Value	-->	GenericInteger

### 23.5 Formal description

IntegerVariable Class	-->	Variable Class
-----------------------	-----	----------------

## 24 OctetStringVariable Class

Description: Defines a variable of type OctetString within the context of a Group object

Base class: Variable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 24.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 24.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with no additional constraints.

#### 24.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

OriginalValue      The OriginalValue attribute shall be an OctetString.

#### 24.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Value*      •      The *Value* attribute shall be an OctetString.

### 24.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 24.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 24.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

- SetVariable  
(*NewVariableValue*) Provision of use:
- The *NewVariableValue* shall be of one of the following types: Integer or OctetString.
    - When the *NewVariableValue* is of type OctetString, the value of the Target variable is set to the value of *NewVariableValue*.
    - When the *NewVariableValue* is of type Integer, it is first converted to an OctetString, then value of the Target variable is set to that OctetString value.

Rules for conversion:

- 1) Integer conversion to OctetString shall make use of the Application CharacterSet attribute.
- 2) Conversion shall be made to the representation of the integer in base 10.

Append  
(*AppendValue*) Appends *AppendValue* to *Target* Variable. Target variable is the first operand of the infix operation. Result is stored in Target Variable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active OctetStringVariable object.

Syntax description:

Append	-->	Target , AppendValue
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
AppendValue	-->	GenericOctetString

## 24.5 Formal description

OctetStringVariable Class	-->	Variable Class
---------------------------	-----	----------------

## 25 ObjectRefVariable Class

Description: Defines a variable of type ObjectReference within the context of a Group object

Base class: Variable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 25.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 25.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with no additional constraints.

### 25.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

OriginalValue            The OriginalValue attribute shall be an ObjectReference.

### 25.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

Value                    •            The Value attribute shall be an ObjectReference.

## 25.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 25.3 Internal behaviours

The internal behaviours of this class are the same semantics as for its base class.

## 25.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 action is defined:

SetVariable            Provision of use:  
(NewVariableValue) •            The NewVariableValue shall be a GenericObjectReference.

## 25.5 Formal description

ObjectRefVariable Class            --> Variable Class
---

## 26 ContentRefVariable Class

Description:            Defines a variable of type ContentReference within the context of a Group object

Base class:             Variable

Subclasses:            None

Status:                 Concrete class

### 26.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 26.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with no additional constraints.

#### 26.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

OriginalValue            The OriginalValue attribute shall be a ContentReference.

### 26.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Value* • The *Value* attribute shall be a ContentReference.

### 26.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 26.3 Internal behaviours

The internal behaviours of this class are the same semantics as for its base class.

### 26.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 action is defined:

SetVariable Provision of use:  
(*NewVariableValue*) • The *NewVariableValue* shall be a GenericContentReference.

### 26.5 Formal description

ContentRefVariable Class --> Variable Class
---

## 27 Presentable Class

Description: Defines the behaviour of objects that may be presented within a Scene

Base class: Ingredient

Subclasses: Stream, Visible, Audio, TokenGroup

Status: Abstract class

### 27.1 Attributes

This subclass defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 27.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 27.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 27.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 27.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 27.3 Internal behaviours

The internal behaviours of this class have the same semantics as for its base class.

### 27.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics, except as noted below (SetData). In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

SetData                      Execute synchronously the following actions:

- 1)        Execute the SetData action as defined in the Ingredient class.
- 2)        If the Presentable is active, present it again immediately using the new value of *Content*.

Provisions of use and syntax description are provided in the Ingredient class.

Run                            Execute the following actions:

- 1)        If the target Presentable is active, disregard this action.
- 2)        If the target Presentable is non-available or is inactive, apply the *Activation* behaviour of the Presentable.

Syntax description:

Run	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Stop                            Execute the following actions:

- 1)        If the target Presentable is inactive, disregard this action.
- 2)        If the target Presentable is active, apply the *Deactivation* behaviour of the Presentable.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be available.

Syntax description:

Stop	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

### 27.5 Formal description

Presentable Class	-->	Ingredient Class
-------------------	-----	------------------

## 28 TokenManager Class

Description:                      Mix-in class that defines functions to manage the navigation of a logical token among a group of elements. The token may be used to give a special behaviour to one element in the group, such as the highlight in a jumping-highlight navigation scheme.

Base class:                        None (mix-in)

Subclasses: TokenGroup  
 Status: Abstract class

## 28.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 28.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has no inherited attributes.

### 28.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following exchanged attributes:

**MovementTable** Table that indicates to which element to move the token according to the previous element and an arbitrary number of movements.

The MovementTable attribute describes a discrete function  $c2 = f(c1, m)$ , where  $c1$  and  $c2$  are one-based indices of elements, and  $m$  is the *Movement* parameter used in the definition of the Move action. The index 0 indicates that no element holds the token.

For instance, if the token is on element 2, and the action Move(4) is executed, the expression  $f(2, 4)$  evaluates to the number of the element to get the token.

The function  $f$  is represented as a  $N \times M$  array, where  $N$  is the number of elements in the group and  $M$  is the number of possible movements. The elements are referred to by a one-based numeric index.

- Optional attribute.
- Sequence of Movement data structures. Each Movement has an implicit MovementIdentifier, which is a one-based Integer index computed according to the position of the Movement in the sequence. Each Movement further consists of:
  - TargetElements: Sequence of Integers. These Integers define which element will get the token when a Movement is performed.
- Default value: none

#### Movement Table Example:

Appearance of elements on the screen:

Element 1	Element 2
Element 3	Element 4

Content of the Movement Table:

Token at:	Element 1	Element 2	Element 3	Element 4
Move(1)	1	2	1	2
Move(2)	3	4	3	4
Move(3)	1	1	3	3
Move(4)	2	2	4	4
Move(5)	4	2	3	4
Move(6)	1	2	2	4

According to this table, the action Move(3) when the token is on Element 2 would result in Element 1 getting the token. The action Move(4) when the token is on Element 4 would have no effect at all.

The movements shown in the table could map to remote control keys as follows:

Move(1) → UpArrow	Move(4) → RightArrow
Move(2) → DownArrow	Move(5) → DownDiagonalRight
Move(3) → LeftArrow	Move(6) → UpDiagonalRight

NOTE – If a cell in the MovementTable contains the value 0, the corresponding Move will result in no element having the token. See *TokenPosition* below.

### 28.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*TokenPosition*      Index of the element that currently has the token.

- Integer within the range [0, number of elements].
- Initial value: 1.
- The value 0 has the special meaning that no element has the token.

### 28.2 Events

This class defines the following events:

*TokenMovedFrom*      This event is generated when an element loses the token.

- Associated data: Index. This is an Integer representing the index of the element that loses the token.

*TokenMovedTo*      This event is generated when an element gets the token.

- Associated data: Index. This is an Integer representing the index of the element that gets the token.

### 28.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines the following internal behaviour:

*TransferToken*  
(*TargetElement*)      Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Generate a *TokenMovedFrom* event with the value of the *TokenPosition* attribute as associated data.
- 2) Set the *TokenPosition* attribute to the value of the *TargetElement* parameter.
- 3) Generate a *TokenMovedTo* event with the value of the *TokenPosition* attribute as associated data.

The *TokenMovedTo* and *TokenMovedFrom* events will be generated even if the value of *TokenPosition* after (before) the token moved was 0.

## 28.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class defines the following applicable MHEG-5 actions:

**Move** Move the token between elements of the group. The movement to apply from any particular element location is described in the *MovementTable* attribute.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Determine the *TargetElement* by using the *MovementTable*.
- 2) If the *TargetElement* does not have the token yet, apply the *TransferToken(TargetElement)* behaviour of the *TokenManager*.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *TokenManager*.

Syntax description:

Move	-->	Target , Movement Identifier
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Movement Identifier	-->	GenericInteger

**MoveTo (*Index*)** Move the token to a specific element of the group.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Determine the *TargetElement* by using the *Index* parameter of the *MoveTo* action.
- 2) If the target element does not have the token yet, apply the *TransferToken(TargetElement)* behaviour of the *TokenManager*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *TokenManager*.
- *Index* shall be set within the range  $[0, N]$ , where  $N$  is the number of elements in the group.

Syntax description:

MoveTo	-->	Target , Index
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Index	-->	GenericInteger

**GetTokenPosition (*TokenPositionVar*)** Set the Variable referenced by *TokenPositionVar* to the value of the *TokenPosition* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *TokenManager*.
- *TokenPositionVar* shall refer to an active *IntegerVariable* object.

#### Syntax description:

GetTokenPosition	-->	Target , TokenPositionVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
TokenPositionVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 28.5 Formal description

TokenManager Class	-->	MovementTable?
MovementTable	-->	Movement+
Movement	-->	TargetElement+
TargetElement	-->	INTEGER

## 29 TokenGroup Class

Description: Defines a group of Visible objects for navigation

Each Visible object in the group may hold a token, as defined in the TokenManager class. On the basis of the events that are generated when that token moves, a special behaviour for the Visible that holds the token may be implemented, such as a highlight.

Base class: Presentable, TokenManager

Subclasses: ListGroup

Status: Concrete class

### 29.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 29.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
<i>TokenPosition</i>	TokenManager	In the TokenGroup class, this attribute shall take values only in the range $[0, N]$ , where $N$ is the number of Visible in the TokenGroup. The value 0 signifies that no Visible has the token.

### 29.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

TokenGroupItems	Set of TokenGroupItems that belong to the group. Each TokenGroupItem contains a reference to a Visible and a number of Actions, called ActionSlots. These actions may be executed on demand by the CallActionSlot action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sequence of the following data structures:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– AVisible: Reference to a Visible object.</li><li>– ActionSlots: Optional sequence of Action objects.</li></ul></li></ul>
NoTokenActionSlots	Set of ActionSlot that may be executed on demand by the CallActionSlot action when no item has the token. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional attribute.</li><li>• Sequence of ActionSlot.</li></ul>

### 29.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 29.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base classes, with identical semantics.

## 29.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviours of this class have changes in semantics:

<i>Activation</i>	Execute the following sequence of actions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) Apply the <i>Activation</i> behaviour as inherited from the Presentable class.</li><li>2) Apply the <i>Activation</i> behaviour to each item in the order given by TokenGroupItems.</li><li>3) Generate a <i>TokenMovedTo</i> event with the value of the <i>TokenPosition</i> attribute as associated data.</li><li>4) Set the <i>RunningStatus</i> to True and generate an <i>IsRunning</i> event.</li></ol>
<i>Deactivation</i>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) Generate a <i>TokenMovedFrom</i> event with the value of the <i>TokenPosition</i> attribute as associated data.</li><li>2) Apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour as inherited from the Presentable class.</li></ol>

## 29.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics, except as defined below. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 action is defined:

- CallActionSlot  
(*Index*)
- Execute an Action object associated with the item that currently has the token.
- Execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) If *TokenPosition* is set to 0, consider the ActionSlots sequence of the NoTokenActionSlots attribute.
  - 2) If *TokenPosition* is different from 0, consider the ActionSlots sequence that is associated with the item that currently has the token.
  - 3) Consider the ActionSlot that is at position *Index* in the ActionSlots sequence. If this ActionSlot is *NULL*, then ignore the effect of the CallActionSlot action. Otherwise, execute that ActionSlot.

The execution of the CallActionSlot action is not completed until the ActionSlot action has been executed.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active TokenGroup object.
- *Index* shall be set in the range [0, number of items in TokenGroupItem].

Syntax description:

CallActionSlot	-->	Target , Index
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
Index	-->	GenericInteger

## 29.5 Formal description

TokenGroup Class	-->	Presentable Class , TokenManager Class , TokenGroupItems , NoTokenActionSlots?
NoTokenActionSlots	-->	ActionSlots
TokenGroupItems	-->	TokenGroupItem+
TokenGroupItem	-->	Avisible , ActionSlots?
Avisible	-->	ObjectReference
ActionSlots	-->	ActionSlot+
ActionSlot	-->	Action Class   NULL

## 30 ListGroup Class

Description: This class defines locations on the screen for each position as defined in the *MovementTable* inherited from the base class. Furthermore, it defines functionality to present Visibles contained in an internal list at these locations and to add Visibles to, and remove Visibles from, this internal list.

Base class: TokenGroup

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

NOTE 1 – SetPosition, GetPosition, Run, Stop and other elementary actions may be targeted to Visibles in ListGroup; however, the author should be warned of the possible side effects of such actions (e.g. regarding *Position* of Visibles).

NOTE 2 – Although not recommended, it is allowed to have a Visible referenced by several ListGroups; in such case, behaviours of that Visible depend on which ListGroup or elementary actions are invoked. The author should be aware of possible side effects.

### 30.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 30.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class.

#### 30.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

Positions Set of screen coordinates associated with the positions as specified by the *TokenMovementTable* attribute inherited from TokenGroup. Together these attributes specify the *cells* of the ListGroup. Each cell has an index, identical to the logical position as defined in the *TokenMovementTable*.

- Sequence of the following data structure:
  - Position: Pair of integers (XPosition, YPosition).

WrapAround An optional Boolean indicating the behaviour of the ListGroup with respect to the presentation of the items in the *ItemList*.

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: False.

MultipleSelection An optional Boolean that determines if the ListGroup allows multiple items to have their *ItemSelectionStatus* set to True simultaneously.

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: False.

### 30.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

**ItemList** Set of references to *Visible*s that belong to the group. Each reference has implicitly an index number, starting from 1. This index number is used to refer to the references in the *ItemList* attribute.

Each item in the *ItemList* has a *ItemSelectionStatus* attribute. This *ItemSelectionStatus* is a Boolean, with a default value of False. This attribute can be set using the *SelectItem* and *DeselectItem* elementary actions; its value can be returned using the *GetItemStatus* elementary action. Note that this attribute is not part of the *Visible* objects referenced from the *ItemList*.

When the *ListGroup* is active, items of the *ItemList*, starting with the item which is indicated by the *FirstItem* attribute, are presented at the cells. The other items are made inactive. The presentation depends also on the value of the *WrapAround* attribute.

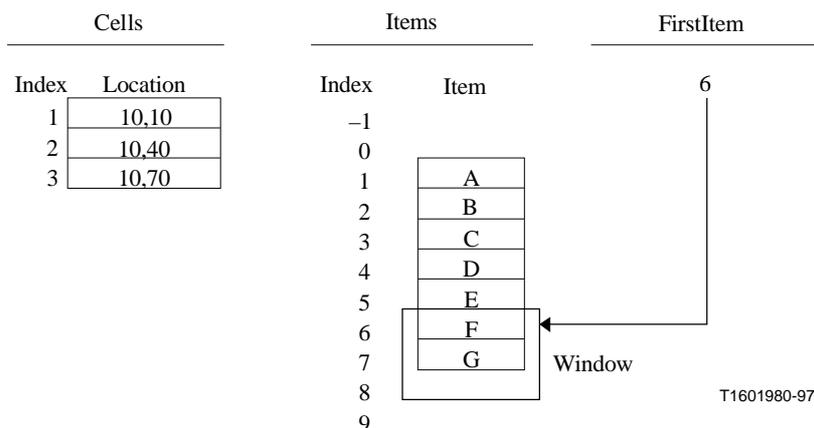
At preparation, this set is initialized to the set of references listed in the *TokenGroupItems* attribute.

- Set of references to *Visible*s
- Initial value: Empty set

**FirstItem** The index of the item of the *ItemList* which is presented at the first cell. This defines a "window" on the ordered list of items in the *ItemList*. This window is equal in size to the number of cells and the position of this window with respect to the items can be changed using the *ScrollItems* elementary action.

The presentation of the items in the list depends on the position of this window, and the value of the *WrapAround* attribute.

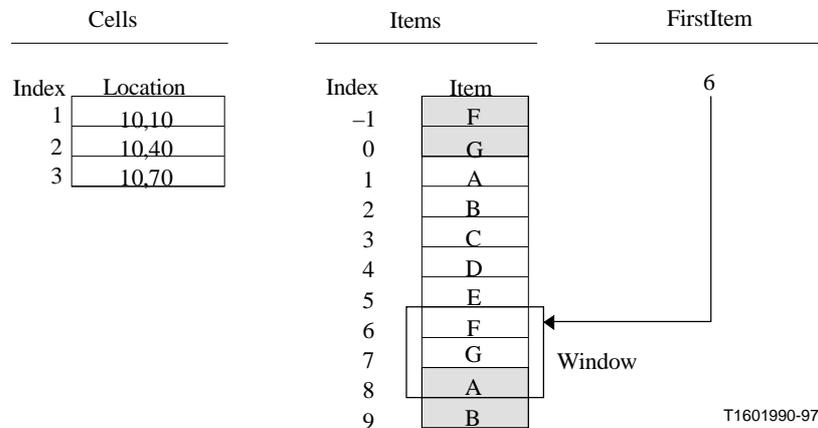
If there are at least as many items in the *ItemList* as there are cells, the window can be visualized easily. This situation is depicted twice below. In the first example, *WrapAround* is False, i.e. the list is not wrapping:



**Figure 6/T.172 – Presentation when WrapAround is False**

In this case, items F and G are presented at cells 1 and 2 respectively, while the other items are not presented. Cell 3 remains unused.

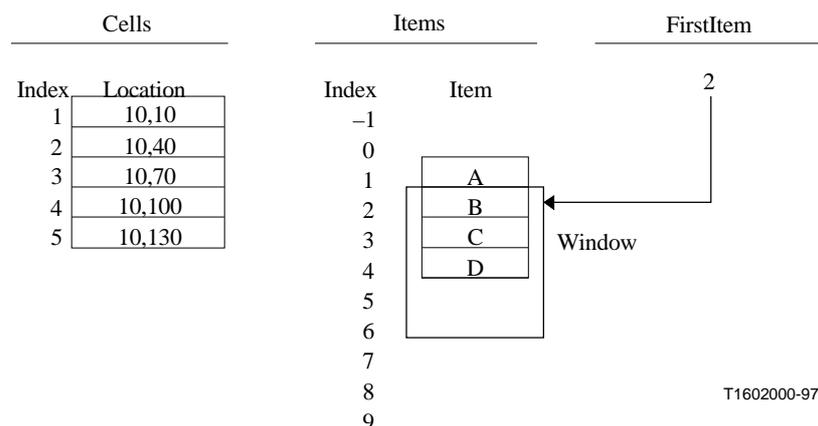
In the next example, *WrapAround* is True, i.e. the list is wrapping:



**Figure 7/T.172 – Presentation when WrapAround is True**

In this case, items F, G and A are presented at cells 1, 2 and 3 respectively, while the other items are not presented. Note that in a wrapping list, the indices of the items are extended (modulo the number of items in the list). For instance, ..., -4, 3, 10, ... are all valid indices for item C in the above example.

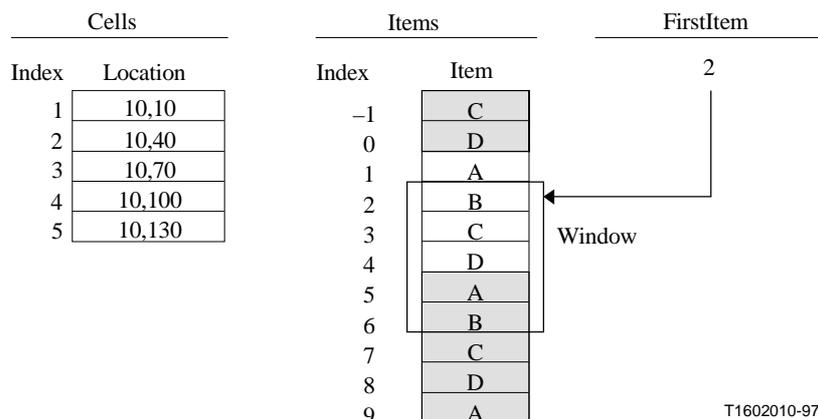
The other situation occurs if there are less items in the ItemList as there are cells. This situation is depicted twice below. In this next example, *WrapAround* is False, i.e. the list is not wrapping:



**Figure 8/T.172 – Presentation of few elements when WrapAround is False**

This case is much like the first example only the window is bigger. Items B, C and D are presented at cells 1, 2 and 3 respectively, while item A is not presented. Cells 4 and 5 remain unused.

In the next example, *WrapAround* is True, i.e. the list is wrapping:



**Figure 9/T.172 – Presentation of few elements when WrapAround is True**

The important thing in this case is that there are two candidate cells to present item B. Since *Visible*s can have just one position, items can also just be presented in one cell. If according to the window an item can be presented at more than one cell, it will be presented only at the cell with the lowest index. In this case, item B will be presented at cell 1. Items C, D and A are presented at cells 2, 3 and 4 respectively. Cell 5 remains unused. Note that when the number of items is less than the number of cells, cells will remain unused, even if the list is wrapping.

Finally, any Integer value is allowed for *FirstItem*. In some cases, when *WrapAround* is False, it may occur that every cell is empty; such a case, where no *Visible* is displayed in the window, is allowed.

- Integer.
- Initial value: 1.

## 30.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base classes, with identical semantics. In addition, the following events are defined:

**FirstItemPresented** This event is generated each time the presentation status of the first item in the *ItemList* changes. The associated value will reflect the new presentation status. The presentation status of the item can change if the *FirstItem* attribute is changed, or if the number of items in the list is changed.

- Associated data, Boolean: True if the item is presented, False if it is not presented.

**LastItemPresented** This event is generated each time the presentation status of the last item in the *ItemList* changes. The associated value will reflect the new presentation status. The presentation status of the item can change if the *FirstItem* attribute is changed, or if the number of items in the list is changed.

- Associated data, Boolean: True if the item is presented, False if it is not presented.

HeadItems	<p>This event is generated each time the number of items in the <i>ItemList</i> with an index in the range [1, <i>FirstItem</i> –1] changes. This number can change if the <i>FirstItem</i> attribute is changed, or if the number of items in the list is changed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Associated data, Integer: the number of items in the <i>ItemList</i> with an index smaller than <i>FirstItem</i>.</li> </ul>
TailItems	<p>This event is generated each time the number of items in the <i>ItemList</i> with an index in the range [<i>FirstItem</i>, number of items] changes. This number can change if the <i>FirstItem</i> attribute is changed, or if the number of items in the list is changed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Associated data, Integer: the number of items in the <i>ItemList</i> with an index greater than or equal to <i>FirstItem</i>.</li> </ul>
ItemSelected	<p>This event is generated if the <i>ItemSelectionStatus</i> of an item changes to True.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Associated data, Integer: the index of the item.</li> </ul>
ItemDeselected	<p>This event is generated if the <i>ItemSelectionStatus</i> of an item changes to False.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Associated data, Integer: the index of the item.</li> </ul>

### 30.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines the following internal behaviours:

<i>Preparation</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Preparation</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> <li>2) Add each reference listed in the <i>TokenGroupItems</i> attribute to the <i>ItemList</i>. If a Visible is referenced more than once in the <i>TokenGroupItems</i>, it is added only once in the <i>ItemList</i>.</li> </ol>
<i>Destruction</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Reset all Visible's of the ListGroup to their OriginalPosition.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Destruction</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> </ol>
<i>Activation</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Activation</i> behaviour as inherited from the base class.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Update</i> behaviour.</li> </ol>
<i>Deactivation</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour to all Visible's referenced in the <i>ItemList</i>.</li> <li>2) Apply the <i>Deactivation</i> behaviour as defined in the base class.</li> </ol>

### *Update*

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) For each item to be presented at a certain cell, set its *Position* (internal attribute) to the position defined for that cell. Subsequently, if the *RunningStatus* of the ListGroup is true, and the item is inactive, apply the *Activation* behaviour to it.
- 2) For each item not to be presented set its position to its *OriginalPosition* attribute. Subsequently, if the *RunningStatus* of the ListGroup is true, and the item is active, apply the *Deactivation* behaviour to it.

### *Additem*

(*Index, Item*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Visible referenced by the *Item* parameter is already in the *ItemList*, ignore this behaviour.
- 2) If *Index* is less than 1 or greater than the current number of *ItemList* + 1, ignore this behaviour.
- 3) Add the *Item* reference at position *Index* in the *ItemList*. (The item previously at position *Index* in the *ItemList* – if any – will now have index *Index* +1 and, similarly, every item of index greater than *Index* will now have an index incremented by one.)
- 4) Apply the *Update* behaviour.

### *Delitem*

(*Item*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Visible referenced by the *Item* parameter is not in the *ItemList*, ignore this action.
- 2) Remove the reference indicated by the *Item* parameter from the *ItemList*. (The item index of the following items in *ItemList* will decrement by one.)
- 3) Set the position of the referenced Visible to its *OriginalPosition*.
- 4) Apply the *Update* behaviour.

### *Select*

(*ItemIndex*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If *ItemSelectionStatus* of item with index *ItemIndex* is True, ignore this behaviour.
- 2) If *MultipleSelection* is False, apply *Deselect(Index)* internal behaviour for any item with index *Index*, for which the *ItemSelectionStatus* is True.
- 3) Set the *ItemSelectionStatus* of the item with index *ItemIndex* to True.
- 4) Generate an *ItemSelected* event with *ItemIndex* as associated data.

*Deselect*  
(*ItemIndex*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If *ItemSelectionStatus* of item with index *ItemIndex* is False, ignore this behaviour.
- 2) Set the *ItemSelectionStatus* of the item with index *Index* to False.
- 3) Generate an *ItemDeselected* event with *Index* as associated data.

### 30.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

*AddItem*  
(*ItemIndex*,  
*VisibleReference*)

Apply the *AddItem*(*ItemIndex*, *VisibleReference*) internal behaviour to add the reference to the Visible, as indicated by the *VisibleReference* parameter at the position indicated by the *ItemIndex* parameter.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.
- *VisibleReference* shall refer to an available Visible object, which is not referred to by any reference in the *ItemList*.

Syntax description:

<i>AddItem</i>	-->	<i>Target</i> , <i>ItemIndex</i> , <i>VisibleReference</i>
<i>Target</i>	-->	<i>GenericObjectReference</i>
<i>ItemIndex</i>	-->	<i>GenericInteger</i>
<i>VisibleReference</i>	-->	<i>GenericObjectReference</i>

*DelItem*  
(*VisibleReference*)

Apply the *DelItem*(*VisibleReference*) internal behaviour to delete the reference to the Visible, as indicated by the *VisibleReference* parameter from the *ItemList* attribute, if it occurs in it.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

<i>DelItem</i>	-->	<i>Target</i> , <i>VisibleReference</i>
<i>Target</i>	-->	<i>GenericObjectReference</i>
<i>VisibleReference</i>	-->	<i>GenericObjectReference</i>

GetListItem  
(ItemIndex,  
ItemRefVar)

Return the reference included in the *ItemList* attribute with the index specified by the *ItemIndex* parameter in the *ObjectRefVariable* referenced by *ItemRefVar*.

If *WrapAround* is False, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, ignore the action.

If *WrapAround* is True, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, the *ItemIndex* shall be interpreted modulo the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *ListGroup* object.
- *ItemRefVar* shall refer to an active *ObjectRefVariable* object.
- If *WrapAround* is False, *ItemIndex* shall be in the range [1, Number of items].

Syntax description:

GetListItem	-->	Target , ItemIndex , ItemRefVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemIndex	-->	GenericInteger
ItemRefVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetCellItem  
(CellIndex,  
ItemRefVar)

Return the reference of the visible presented at the cell indicated by the *CellIndex* parameter in the *ObjectRefVariable* referenced by *ItemRefVar*.

If the *CellIndex* specifies an index smaller than or equal to 1 return the reference of the visible presented at the first cell. If the *CellIndex* specifies an index greater than or equal to the number of cells, return the reference of the visible presented in the last cell. If no visible is presented at the indicated cell, return *NULL*.

NOTE – The *GetTokenPosition* action can be used to get the index of the cell which currently holds the token, as defined in the base class.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *ListGroup* object.
- *ItemRefVar* shall refer to an active *ObjectRefVariable* object.

Syntax description:

GetCellItem	-->	Target , CellIndex , ItemRefVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
CellIndex	-->	GenericInteger
ItemRefVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetItemStatus  
(ItemIndex,  
ItemStatusVar)

Return the value of the *ItemSelectionStatus* attribute of the item in the *ItemList* with index *ItemIndex* in the BooleanVariable referenced by *ItemStatusVar*.

If *WrapAround* is False, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, ignore the action.

If *WrapAround* is True, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, the *ItemIndex* shall be interpreted modulo the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.
- *ItemRefVar* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.
- If *WrapAround* is False, *ItemIndex* shall be in the range [1, Number of items].

Syntax description:

GetItemStatus	-->	Target , ItemIndex , ItemStatusVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemIndex	-->	GenericInteger
ItemStatusVar	-->	ObjectReference

SelectItem  
(ItemIndex)

If *WrapAround* is False, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, ignore this action; otherwise:

If *WrapAround* is True, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, the *ItemIndex* shall be interpreted modulo the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute.

Apply the *Select(ItemIndex)* internal behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

SelectItem	-->	Target , ItemIndex
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemIndex	-->	GenericInteger

DeselectItem  
(ItemIndex)

If *WrapAround* is False, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, ignore this action; otherwise:

If *WrapAround* is True, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, the *ItemIndex* shall be interpreted modulo the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute.

Apply the *Deselect(ItemIndex)* internal behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

DeselectItem	-->	Target , ItemIndex
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemIndex	-->	GenericInteger

ToggleItem  
(ItemIndex)

If *WrapAround* is False, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, ignore this action, otherwise:

If *WrapAround* is True, and if the *ItemIndex* specifies an index smaller than 1 or greater than the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute, the *ItemIndex* shall be interpreted modulo the number of items in the *ItemList* attribute.

If the *ItemSelectionStatus* of the item indicated by *ItemIndex* is True, apply the *Deselect(ItemIndex)* internal behaviour, otherwise apply the *Select(ItemIndex)* internal behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

ToggleItem	-->	Target , ItemIndex ,
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemIndex	-->	GenericInteger

ScrollItems  
(ItemsToScroll)

Add *ItemsToScroll* to the *FirstItem* attribute, and apply the *Update* behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

ScrollItems	-->	Target , ItemsToScroll
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ItemsToScroll	-->	GenericInteger

SetFirstItem  
(NewFirstItem)

Set the value of the *FirstItem* attribute to *NewFirstItem*. Apply the *Update* behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.

Syntax description:

SetFirstItem	-->	Target , NewFirstItem
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewFirstItem	-->	GenericInteger

GetFirstItem  
(FirstItemVar)

Return the current value of the *FirstItem* attribute in the IntegerVariable referenced by *FirstItemVar*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.
- *FirstItemVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetFirstItem	-->	Target , FirstItemVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
FirstItemVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetListSize  
(SizeVar)

Return the number of items in the *ItemList* in the IntegerVariable referenced by *SizeVar*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available ListGroup object.
- *SizeVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object.

### Syntax description:

GetListSize	-->	Target , SizeVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
SizeVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 30.5 Formal description

ListGroup Class	-->	TokenGroup Class , Positions , WrapAround? , MultipleSelection?
Positions	-->	Position*
Position	-->	XYposition ,
WrapAround	-->	BOOLEAN
MultipleSelection	-->	BOOLEAN

## 31 Visible Class

Description:	Defines the behaviour of Presentables that have a visual representation on the screen
Base class:	Presentable
Subclasses:	Video, RTGraphics, Bitmap, LineArt, Text, Slider, Button
Status:	Abstract class

### 31.1 Attributes

This subclass defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 31.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 31.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

**OriginalBoxSize** Original size of the bounding box of the Visible object with respect to the coordinate system of the Scene. Size is given by a pair of Integers representing respectively the width (length along X-axis) and height (length along Y-axis) of the box.

Negative values shall not be used. Values exceeding the scene coordinate system are allowed; in that case only the part of the Visible within the scene coordinate system shall be rendered.

- Pair of Integers (XBoxSize, YBoxSize).

<i>OriginalPosition</i>	<p>Original position of the top left corner of the Visible with respect to the coordinate system of the Scene.</p> <p>This is a set of (X, Y) coordinates expressing the original position of the top left corner of the visible in the coordinate system of the currently active Scene.</p> <p>Negative values and values exceeding the scene coordinate system are allowed; in that case only the part of the Visible within the scene coordinate system shall be rendered.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional pair of Integers (XPosition, YPosition).</li> <li>• Default value: (0,0).</li> </ul>
<i>OriginalPaletteRef</i>	<p>Indicate the initial Palette object that shall be used to render colours of the Visible object.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional reference to a Palette object.</li> <li>• Default value: No palette.</li> </ul> <p>This attribute is mandatory when other colour attributes are set and need Palette references.</p>

### 31.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

<i>BoxSize</i>	<p>Size of the bounding box of the Visible object with respect to the coordinate system of the Scene. Parts of the Visible that fall outside the borders of the bounding box shall not be rendered. If the Visible does not completely cover the contents of the bounding box, then the remaining parts of the bounding box shall be transparent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair of Integers (XBoxSize, YBoxSize).</li> <li>• Initial value: Value of the OriginalBoxSize attribute.</li> </ul>
<i>Position</i>	<p>Position of the top left corner of the Visible with respect to the coordinate system of the Scene. The Visible, when rendered, shall have its top left corner at this position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair of Integers (XPosition, YPosition).</li> <li>• Initial value: Value of the OriginalPosition attribute.</li> </ul>
<i>PaletteRef</i>	<p>If a Palette is used, reference to the Palette object that shall be used to render colours of the Visible object.</p> <p>The <i>Palette</i> attribute shall not be defined for classes specifying that OriginalPaletteRef shall not be encoded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional reference to a Palette object.</li> <li>• Initial value: Value of the OriginalPaletteRef attribute.</li> </ul>

## 31.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 31.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with the following changes in semantics:

*Preparation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Execute steps 1), 2) and 3) of the *Preparation* behaviour as defined in the Root class.
- 2) If the Visible object is not referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, add a reference to this Visible at the top of the *DisplayStack*.
- 3) Execute steps 4), 5) and 6) of the *Preparation* behaviour as defined in the Root class.

*Destruction* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the Visible object is referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, remove the reference to this Visible from the *DisplayStack*.
- 2) Execute the *Destruction* behaviour as defined in the base class.

*Activation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Execute the *Activation* behaviour as defined in the base class.
- 2) Display the Visible according to its position in the *DisplayStack* and to the position and the bounding box defined by the *Position* and *BoxSize* attributes.
- 3) Set the *RunningStatus* to True and generate an *IsRunning* event.

*Deactivation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the *RunningStatus* attribute of the object is False, ignore the behaviour; otherwise:
- 2) Stop displaying the Visible.
- 3) Execute *Deactivation* behaviour as defined in the base class.

### 31.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

*SetPosition* Change the location of the target Visible.  
(*NewXPosition*,  
*NewYPosition*) Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *Position* attribute according to *NewXPosition* and *NewYPosition*.

- 2) If the Visible object is active, redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *NewXPosition* and *NewYPosition* shall correspond to a location interpreted in the Scene coordinate system defined by the *SceneCoordinateSystem* attribute of the currently active Scene.

Syntax description:

SetPosition	-->	Target , NewXPosition , NewYPosition
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewXPosition	-->	GenericInteger
NewYPosition	-->	GenericInteger

GetPosition  
(*XpositionVar*,  
*YpositionVar*)

Return the location of the target Visible.

Set the Variables referenced by *XPositionVar* and *YPositionVar* to the value of the X and Y positions of the target Visible respectively.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *XpositionVar* and *YpositionVar* shall refer to active IntegerVariable objects.

Syntax description:

GetPosition	-->	Target , XPositionVar , YPositionVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
XpositionVar	-->	ObjectReference
YpositionVar	-->	ObjectReference

SetBoxSize  
(*XNewBoxSize*,  
*YNewBoxSize*)

Change the size of the bounding box of the target Visible.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *BoxSize* attribute.
- 2) Redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *XnewBoxSize* and *YNewBoxSize* shall be positive values and different from 0.

Syntax description:

SetBoxSize	-->	Target , XNewBoxSize , YNewBoxSize
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
XNewBoxSize	-->	GenericInteger
YNewBoxSize	-->	GenericInteger

GetBoxSize  
(*XboxSizeVar*,  
*YboxSizeVar*)

Return the size of the bounding box of the target Visible.

Set the Variables referenced by *XBoxSizeVar* and *YBoxSizeVar* to the value of the X and Y positions of the target Visible respectively.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *XboxSizeVar* and *YBoxSizeVar* shall refer to active IntegerVariable objects.

Syntax description:

GetBoxSize	-->	Target , XBoxSizeVar , YBoxSizeVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
XBoxSizeVar	-->	ObjectReference
YBoxSizeVar	-->	ObjectReference

BringToFront

Put a Visible at the foreground of the screen.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the target Visible object is not referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, ignore this action.
- 2) If the target Visible object is referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, move the reference to this Visible at the top of the *DisplayStack*.
- 3) If the target Visible object is active, redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.

Syntax description:

BringToFront	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

SendToBack

Put a Visible at the background of the screen.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the target Visible object is not referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, ignore this action.
- 2) If the target Visible object is referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, move the reference to this Visible at the bottom of the *DisplayStack*.
- 3) If the target Visible object is active, redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.

Syntax description:

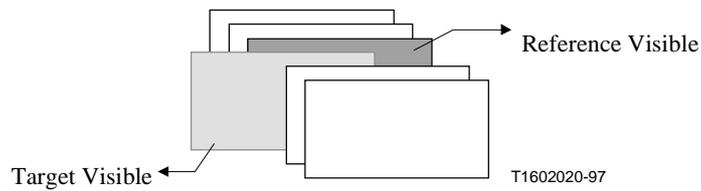
SendToBack	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

PutBefore  
(*ReferenceVisible*)

Put a Visible exactly in front of another Visible in the display stack.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the target Visible object is not referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, ignore this action.
- 2) If the target Visible object is referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, move the reference to this Visible at the position exactly before the reference to the *ReferenceVisible* in the *DisplayStack*.
- 3) If the target Visible object is active, redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.



**Figure 10/T.172 – Effect of PutBefore action**

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *ReferenceVisible* shall be a reference to an available Visible object.
- The *DisplayStack* of the active Application object shall contain a reference to the *ReferenceVisible* object.

Syntax description:

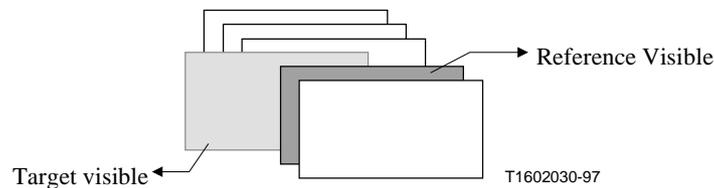
PutBefore	-->	Target ,
		ReferenceVisible
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ReferenceVisible	-->	GenericObjectReference

PutBehind  
(ReferenceVisible)

Put a Visible exactly below another Visible in the display stack.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the target Visible object is not referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, ignore this action.
- 2) If the target Visible object is referenced in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object, move the reference to this Visible at the position exactly after the reference to the *ReferenceVisible* in the *DisplayStack*.
- 3) If the target Visible object is active, redraw the graphic widget representing the object on the screen in the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.



**Figure 11/T.172 – Effect of PutBehind action**

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *ReferenceVisible* shall be set or refer to a reference to an available Visible object.
- The *DisplayStack* of the active Application object shall contain a reference to the *ReferenceVisible* object.

Syntax description:

PutBehind	-->	Target , ReferenceVisible
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
ReferenceVisible	-->	GenericObjectReference

SetPaletteRef  
(*NewPaletteRef*)

Change the colour look-up table used to render colours of the Visible object.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set *PaletteRef* of the target Visible to *NewPaletteRef*.
- 2) If the target Visible is active, redraw the Visible by taking into account the new value of *PaletteRef*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Visible object.
- *NewPaletteRef* shall contain a reference to an active Palette object.

Syntax description:

SetPaletteRef	-->	Target , NewPaletteRef
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewPaletteRef	-->	GenericObjectReference

### 31.5 Formal description

Visible Class	-->	Presentable class , OriginalBoxSize , OriginalPosition? , OriginalPaletteRef?
OriginalBoxSize	-->	XLength, Ylength
Xlength	-->	INTEGER
Ylength	-->	INTEGER
OriginalPosition	-->	XYPosition
OriginalPaletteRef	-->	ObjectReference

## 32 Bitmap Class

Description:	Defines the behaviour of a two-dimensional array of pixels
Base class:	Visible
Subclasses:	None
Status:	Concrete class

### 32.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 32.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	Either this attribute or its corresponding default attribute in the Application class (BitmapContentHook) is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.

#### 32.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

**Tiling** When true, this attribute indicates that the bitmap should be replicated (tiled) in the available *BoxSize* of the bitmap.

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: False.

**Original Transparency** This attribute defines the initial transparency of those pixels of the bitmap that are marked as being transparent.

In cases where the coded representation of the bitmap itself defines the value of the Transparency, the transparency defined by content encoding and the transparency defined by this attribute should be combined. The exact algorithm is not defined by this Recommendation.

- Optional Integer in the range [0, 100] (percent).
- Default value: 0%.

#### 32.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

**Transparency** Defines the transparency of those pixels of the bitmap that are marked as being transparent.

- Optional Integer in the range [0, 100] (percent).
- Initial value: Value of the OriginalTransparency attribute.

## 32.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 32.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 32.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**ScaleBitmap**  
(*Xscale, YScale*)

If the MHEG-5 engine implements the Scaling option, the effect of this action is to scale the contents of the Bitmap to the size (*XScale, YScale*). Engines that do not implement the scaling option shall ignore this action.

Note that this action does not affect the *BoxSize* internal attribute of the Bitmap object; in other words, the Bitmap is scaled, but its bounding box remains the same.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Bitmap object.
- *XScale* and *YScale* shall be positive Integers.

Syntax definition:

ScaleBitmap	-->	Target , XScale, Yscale
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
XScale, Yscale	-->	GenericInteger

**SetTransparency**  
(*NewTransparency*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Change the value of the *Transparency* attribute.
- 2) If the bitmap is active, redraw it using the new value of the *Transparency* attribute, according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Bitmap object.
- *NewTransparency* is set within the range [0, 100].

Syntax definition:

ScaleBitmap	-->	Target , NewTransparency
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewTransparency	-->	GenericInteger

### 32.5 Formal description

Bitmap Class	-->	Visible Class, Tiling?, OriginalTransparency?
Tiling	-->	BOOLEAN
OriginalTransparency	-->	INTEGER

### 33 LineArt Class

**Description:** Defines functionality associated with vectorial representation of graphical objects

**Base class:** Visible

**Subclasses:** Rectangle, DynamicLineArt

**Status:** Concrete class

#### 33.1 Attributes

This subclass defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

##### 33.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	Either this attribute or its corresponding default attribute in the Application class (LineArtContentHook) is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.

##### 33.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

**BorderedBoundingBox** The BorderedBoundingBox attribute determines whether the bounding box – defined by BoxSize and Position attributes – is bordered by lines or not. When this attribute is set to True, all further drawings shall take place inside the border and shall not be drawn on top of it. OriginalLineWidth, OriginalLineStyle and OriginalRefLineColour shall be used for the rendering of the bounding box.

- Optional Boolean attribute.
- Default value: True.

**OriginalLineWidth** The OriginalLineWidth attribute determines the original line width of the graphic object including the bounding box.

The OriginalLineWidth attribute is expressed in pixels in the scene coordinate space. It is specified in pixel height for horizontal lines and in pixel width for vertical lines.

The actual rendering resolution and accuracy of the MHEG-5 engine is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional Integer attribute.
- Default value: 1.

#### OriginalLineStyle

The OriginalLineStyle attribute determines the pattern used for the rendering of the lines of the LineArt object.

- Optional Integer attribute – One of 1, 2 or 3;  
1 means solid, 2 means dashed, 3 means dotted.
- Default value: 1 (solid).

#### OriginalRefLineColour

Initial reference colour for the lines used to render the LineArt object.

The OriginalRefLineColour attribute value is expressed either as a string representing an absolute colour value or as an Integer representing a zero-based index in a colour look-up table. In the latter case, the OriginalPaletteRef attribute must contain a reference to a Palette object that is then used to translate the index to an actual colour value.

The encoding of absolute colour values as well as the actual colour resolution in the rendering process are outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional attribute.
- Default value: "black".  
The exact appearance on screen of default value "black" is not fully specified in this subclause.
- OctetString or Integer.

#### OriginalRefFillColour

Initial reference colour for the inside of a closed LineArt object.

The OriginalRefFillColour attribute value is expressed either as a string representing an absolute colour value or as an Integer representing a zero-based index in a colour look-up table. In the latter case, the OriginalPaletteRef attribute must contain a reference to a Palette object that is then used to translate the index to an actual colour value.

If the OriginalRefFillColour is not encoded, a LineArt object that represents a closed shape shall be rendered with a transparent fill colour.

The encoding of absolute colour values as well as the actual colour resolution in the rendering process are outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional attribute.
- Default value: "transparent".
- OctetString or Integer.

### 33.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

*LineWidth* The *LineWidth* attribute determines the line width of the graphical objects that are drawn by the graphical actions.

- Integer.
- Initial Value: OriginalLineWidth.

*LineStyle* Width of the line that the LineArt object is intended to be rendered with.

- One of 1, 2 or 3;  
1 means solid, 2 means dashed, 3 means dotted.
- Initial Value: OriginalLineStyle.

*RefLineColour* Reference colour for the lines used to render the LineArt object.

- OctetString or Integer.
- Initial Value: OriginalRefLineColour.

*RefFillColour* Reference colour for the background colour used to render the LineArt object.

- OctetString or Integer.
- Initial Value: OriginalRefFillColour.

### 33.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 33.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

### 33.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

SetLineWidth Change the width of lines of a LineArt object.

(*NewLineWidth*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the LineWidth attribute to *NewLineWidth*.
- 2) If the target LineArt object is active, redraw immediately the target object by taking into account the new value of the LineWidth attribute and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available LineArt object.
- *NewLineWidth* shall be set or refer to a positive integer value.

Syntax description:

SetLineWidth	-->	Target , NewLineWidth
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewLineWidth	-->	GenericInteger

SetLineStyle  
(*NewLineStyle*)

Change the line style of a LineArt object.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the LineStyle attribute to *NewLineStyle*.
- 2) If the target LineArt object is active, redraw immediately the target object by taking into account the new value of the LineStyle attribute and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available LineArt object.
- *NewLineStyle* shall be set or refer to a positive integer value: 1, 2 or 3.

Syntax description:

SetLineStyle	-->	Target , NewLineStyle
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewLineStyle	-->	GenericInteger

SetLineColour  
(*NewColour*)

Change the colour of lines of a LineArt object.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the RefLineColour attribute to *NewColour*.
- 2) If the target object is active, redraw immediately the target object by taking into account the new value of the LineWidth attribute and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

*NewColour* may be either an absolute colour value or the zero-based index of a colour in the look-up table referenced by the *PaletteRef* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available LineArt object.
- If RefLineColour is currently set to an absolute colour value, *NewColour* shall be set or refer to an absolute colour value.

- If RefLineColour is currently set to an index of a colour look-up table, *NewColour* shall be set or refer to an index of a colour look-up table.

Syntax description:

SetLineColour	-->	Target , NewColour
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewColour	-->	NewColourIndex   NewAbsoluteColour
NewColourIndex	-->	GenericInteger
NewAbsoluteColour	-->	GenericOctetString

SetFillColor  
(*NewColour*)

Change the fill-in colour of a LineArt object.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the RefFillColor attribute to *NewColour*.
- 2) If the target object is active, redraw immediately the target object by taking into account the new value of the RefFillColor attribute and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

*NewColour* may be either an absolute colour value or the zero-based index of a colour in the look-up table referenced by the *PaletteRef* attribute.

If *NewColour* is not encoded, the RefFillColor attribute shall be set to "transparent".

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available LineArt object.
- If *RefFillColor* is not currently set, *NewColour* shall be set or refer to an absolute colour value.
- If *RefFillColor* is currently set to an absolute colour value, *NewColour* shall be set or refer to an absolute colour value.
- If *RefFillColor* is currently set to an index of a colour look-up table, *NewColour* shall be set or refer to an index of a colour look-up table.

Syntax description:

SetFillColor	-->	Target , NewColour?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewColour	-->	NewColourIndex   NewAbsoluteColour
NewColourIndex	-->	GenericInteger
NewAbsoluteColour	-->	GenericOctetString

### 33.5 Formal description

LineArt Class	-->	Visible Class, BorderedBoundingBox?, OriginalLineWidth?, OriginalLineStyle?, OriginalRefLineColour?, OriginalRefFillColour?
BorderedBoundingBox	-->	BOOLEAN
OriginalLineWidth	-->	INTEGER
OriginalLineStyle	-->	
OriginalRefLineColour	-->	Colour
OriginalRefFillColour	-->	Colour

### 34 Rectangle Class

Description: Defines a data structure that deals with rectangles  
 Base class: LineArt  
 Subclasses: None  
 Status: Concrete class

#### 34.1 Attributes

This subclass defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

##### 34.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
<i>BoxSize, Position</i>	Visible	In addition to defining the bounding box for the Rectangle, these attributes also define the size of the Rectangle itself. The Rectangle's size shall be such that it precisely fits inside its bounding box. This means that the borders of the Rectangle occupy <i>LineWidth</i> pixels on the inside of the Rectangle's bounding box.
BorderedBoundingBox	LineArt	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class. It shall always be interpreted as True.  Unlike for its parent class, the BorderedBoundingBox of a Rectangle (i.e. the shape of the Rectangle) shall be drawn using <i>LineWidth</i> , <i>LineStyle</i> and <i>RefLineColour</i> , rather than <i>OriginalLineWidth</i> , <i>OriginalLineStyle</i> and <i>OriginalRefLineColour</i> .

##### 34.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attributes.

### 34.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attributes.

### 34.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 34.3 Internal behaviours

The internal behaviours of this class are the same as those of its base class, with identical semantics.

### 34.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 34.5 Formal description



## 35 DynamicLineArt Class

Description: Defines means to dynamically draw vectorial graphical objects

Base class: LineArt

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete Class

### 35.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 35.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 35.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attributes.

#### 35.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attributes.

### 35.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 35.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines no additional internal behaviour.

### 35.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**SetBoxSize** This action redraws the *DynamicLineArt* object with its new size and cleared of all of its previous drawings, that is filled with *OriginalRefFillColour* (in the particular case where the new size is exactly the old size, this action is similar to a *Clear* action).  
When *BorderedBoundingBox* is set to *True*, the border is redrawn.

**SetPosition, BringToFront, SendToBack, PutBefore, PutBehind** After each of these actions, the *DynamicLineArt* widget is and cleared of all of its previous drawings, that is filled with *OriginalRefFillColour*.  
When *BorderedBoundingBox* is set to *True*, the border is redrawn.

**SetLineWidth** Setting a new value of *LineWidth* shall not modify line width of all existing graphics from the *DynamicLineArt* object; it shall be used to render the next graphics to be drawn.

**SetLineStyle** Setting a new value of *LineStyle* shall not modify line style of all existing graphics from the *DynamicLineArt* object; it shall be used to render the next graphics to be drawn.

**SetLineColour** Setting a new value of *RefLineColour* shall not modify the colour of all existing graphics from the *DynamicLineArt* object; it shall be used to render the next graphics to be drawn.

**SetFillColor** Setting a new value of *RefFillColour* shall not modify colour of all existing graphics from the *DynamicLineArt* object; it shall be used to render the next graphics to be drawn.

**GetLineWidth** Return the current *LineWidth* in the variable *LineWidthVar*.

(*LineWidthVar*)

Provisions of use:

- *LineWidthVar* shall refer to an active *IntegerVariable* object.
- The *Target* object shall be an available *DynamicLineArt* object.

Syntax description:

<code>GetLineWidth</code>	<code>--&gt; Target ,</code>
	<code>LineWidthVar</code>
<code>Target</code>	<code>--&gt; GenericObjectReference</code>
<code>LineWidthVar</code>	<code>--&gt; ObjectReference</code>

GetLineStyle  
(LineStyleVar)

Return the current *LineStyle* into the variable *LineStyleVar*.

Provisions of use:

- *LineStyleVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object.
- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

GetLineStyle	-->	Target , LineStyleVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
LineStyleVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetLineColour  
(LineColourVar)

Return the current *LineColour* in the variable *LineColourVar*.

Provisions of use:

- *LineColourVar* shall refer to an active OctetStringVariable object if the RefLineColour is specified as an OctetString. *LineColourVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object if the RefLineColour is specified as an Integer.
- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

GetLineColour	-->	Target , LineColourVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
LineColourVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetFillColour  
(FillColourVar)

Return the current *RefFillColour* in the variable *FillColourVar*.

Provisions of use:

- *FillColourVar* shall refer to an active OctetStringVariable object if the RefFillColour is specified as an OctetString. *FillColourVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object if the RefFillColour is specified as an Integer.
- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

GetFillColour	-->	Target , FillColourVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
FillColourVar	-->	ObjectReference

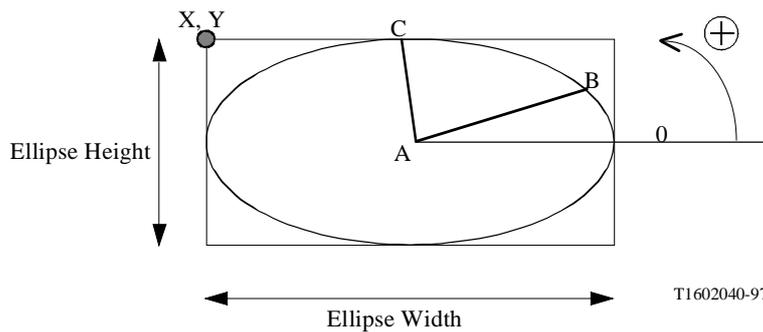
DrawArc  
 (X, Y, EllipseWidth,  
 EllipseHeight,  
 StartAngle,  
 ArcAngle)

Draw an arc between *StartAngle* and *StartAngle + ArcAngle* (arc BC in Figure 12 below).

Arc is drawn in *LineColour*.

Point X, Y is relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. That is to say that X=0, Y=0 corresponds to the top left corner of the bounding box. Values of X and Y outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Angles are expressed in 64<sup>th</sup>s of degrees and are in the interval [0, 23039]. *ArcAngle* shall not be 0.



**Figure 12/T.172 – Illustration of drawing parameters**

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawArc	-->	Target , X, Y, EllipseWidth, EllipseHeight, StartAngle, ArcAngle
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
X	-->	GenericInteger
Y	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseWidth	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseHeight	-->	GenericInteger
StartAngle	-->	GenericInteger
ArcAngle	-->	GenericInteger

DrawSector  
(X, Y,  
EllipseWidth,  
EllipseHeight,  
StartAngle,  
ArcAngle)

Draw a sector between *StartAngle* and *StartAngle + ArcAngle* (the surface ABC in Figure 12 above).

Lines are drawn with *RefLineColour* and the surface is filled up with *RefFillColour*.

Point X, Y is relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. That is to say that X=0, Y=0 corresponds to the top left corner of the bounding box. Values of X and Y outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Angles are expressed in 64<sup>th</sup>s of degrees and are in the interval [0, 23039]. *ArcAngle* shall not be 0.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawSector	-->	Target , X, Y, EllipseWidth, EllipseHeight, StartAngle, ArcAngle
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
X	-->	GenericInteger
Y	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseWidth	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseHeight	-->	GenericInteger
StartAngle	-->	GenericInteger
ArcAngle	-->	GenericInteger

DrawLine  
(X1, Y1, X2, Y2)

Draw a line between (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2)

Points X1, Y1 and X2, Y2 are relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. Values outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawLine	-->	Target ,
		X1 ,
		Y1 ,
		X2 ,
		Y2
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
X1	-->	GenericInteger
Y1	-->	GenericInteger
X2	-->	GenericInteger
Y2	-->	GenericInteger

DrawOval  
(X, Y,  
EllipseWidth,  
EllipseHeight)

Draw an ellipse bounded by the rectangle defined by the parameters (see Figure 12 above).

This ellipse is filled up with *RefFillColour*.

Point X, Y is relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. That is to say that X=0, Y=0 corresponds to the top left corner of the bounding box. Values of X and Y outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawOval	-->	Target ,
		X ,
		Y ,
		EllipseWidth ,
		EllipseHeight
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
X	-->	GenericInteger
Y	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseWidth	-->	GenericInteger
EllipseHeight	-->	GenericInteger

DrawPolygon  
(PointList)

Draw a closed polygon.

This polygon is filled up with *RefFillColour*.

*PointList* is a list of Point.

A Point is defined by X and Y coordinates relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. Values of X and Y outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawPolygon	-->	Target , PointList
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
PointList	-->	Point+
Point	-->	X, Y
X	-->	GenericInteger
Y	-->	GenericInteger

DrawPolyline  
(*PointList*)

Draw series of joint lines.

*PointList* is a list of Point.

A Point is defined by X and Y coordinates relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. Values of X and Y outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawPolyline	-->	Target , PointList
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
PointList	-->	Point+
Point	-->	X, Y
X	-->	GenericInteger
Y	-->	GenericInteger

DrawRectangle  
(*X1, Y1, X2, Y2*)

Draw a rectangle.

This rectangle is filled up with *RefFillColour*.

Top Left point is (*X1, Y1*) and Bottom Right point is (*X2, Y2*). (*X1, Y1*) and (*X2, Y2*) are relative to the *Position* attribute of the object. Values outside of the bounding box are allowed, but only the part of the drawing within the bounding box shall be rendered.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

DrawRectangle	-->	Target ,
		X1 ,
		Y1 ,
		X2 ,
		Y2
X1	-->	GenericInteger
Y1	-->	GenericInteger
X2	-->	GenericInteger
Y2	-->	GenericInteger

*Clear*

Fill up the bounding box with the *OriginalRefFillColour*.

When BorderedBoundingBox is set to True, the border is not filled with *OriginalRefFillColour*.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available DynamicLineArt object.

Syntax description:

Clear	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 35.5 Formal description

DynamicLineArt Class	-->	LineArt Class
----------------------	-----	---------------

## 36 Text Class

Description: Defines attributes and behaviour of pieces of textual information

Base class: Visible

Subclasses: EntryField, HyperText

Status: Concrete class

### 36.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 36.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	Either this attribute or its corresponding default attribute in the Application class (TextContentHook) is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class.

### 36.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

OriginalFont	<p>Indication of which font to use when initially presenting the Text object.</p> <p>The OriginalFont attribute represents either a name for a font (which is resident in the MHEG-5 engine) or a reference to a Font object. In both cases, the indicated font shall be used for rendering the Text object.</p> <p>When no font reference is encoded, the Text object shall be presented using the default font referenced in the active Application object; if no font is referenced there, a default font of the MHEG-5 engine shall be used.</p> <p>NOTE – The OriginalFont attribute provides the initial font for a Text object. In addition, the text encoding format may contain escape sequences to switch between fonts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional attribute.</li><li>• OctetString representing a FontName, or reference to a Font object.</li><li>• Default value: Value encoded by Application.</li></ul>
FontAttributes	<p>This attribute is used to set specific Font attributes such as style, character size, text colour and background colour.</p> <p>The exact encoding format of the <i>FontAttributes</i> attribute is related to the value of the type of Font object mentioned by the <i>Font</i> attribute.</p> <p>When no FontAttributes is encoded, the Text object shall be presented using the default <i>FontAttributes</i> encoded in the active Application object, if no <i>FontAttributes</i> is referenced there, no specific attributes are set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional OctetString.</li><li>• Default value: Value encoded by Application.</li></ul>
TextColour	<p>Indicate which colour should be used to render the foreground of the text object. This attribute is interpreted as a zero-based index in the colour look-up table defined by the <i>PaletteRef</i> attribute, or as a direct colour value, depending on the attribute type.</p>

- Optional Integer or OctetString. An Integer will be interpreted as an index in a Palette; an OctetString will be interpreted as a direct colour value.
- Default value: Value encoded by Application.

#### BackgroundColour

Indicate which colour should be used to render the background of the text object. This attribute is interpreted as a zero-based index in the colour look-up table defined by the *PaletteRef* attribute, or as a direct colour value, depending on the attribute type.

- Optional Integer or OctetString. An Integer will be interpreted as an index in a Palette; an OctetString will be interpreted as a direct colour value.
- Default value: Value encoded by Application.

#### CharacterSet

Identification of the character set, or set of character sets, that shall be used by default for Text rendering. This Integer shall be encoded with a value representing the character set. The application domain shall define a range of CharacterSet and its semantics.

NOTE – The *CharacterSet* attribute provides the initial character set for a Text object. In addition, the text encoding format may contain escape sequences to switch between character sets.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: The value of *CharacterSet* attribute from the Application object, if that attribute is specified.

#### HorizontalJustification

The *HorizontalJustification* attribute indicates how the text lines are justified relative to the vertical edges of the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes of the Text object.

This attribute may be ignored if a coded representation of the text itself has the same functionality to specify this type of rendering. The application domain based on this Recommendation shall define each ContentHook for which the attribute is ignored.

- Optional attribute – One of *start* | *end* | *centre* | *justified*.
- Default value: *start*.

#### VerticalJustification

The *VerticalJustification* attribute indicates how the text lines are justified relatively to the horizontal edges of the bounding box defined by the *BoxSize* and *Position* attributes of the Text object.

This attribute may be ignored if a coded representation of the text itself has the same functionality to specify this type of rendering. The application domain based on this Recommendation shall define each ContentHook for which the attribute is ignored.

- Optional attribute – One of *start* | *end* | *centre* | *justified*.
- Default value: *start*.

LineOrientation	<p>The <i>LineOrientation</i> attribute is combined with the <i>StartCorner</i> attribute to determine the way characters are organised into lines, and lines into sequences of lines.</p> <p>This attribute may be ignored if a coded representation of the text itself has the same functionality to specify this type of rendering. The application domain based on this Recommendation shall define each ContentHook for which the attribute is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional attribute – One of <i>vertical</i>   <i>horizontal</i>.</li> <li>• Default value: <i>horizontal</i>.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE – For <i>vertical</i> line orientation, the character orientation is supposed to be normal (i.e. the entire line is rotated 90 degrees from <i>horizontal</i>), unless the contents of the <i>Text</i> specify otherwise.</p>
StartCorner	<p>The <i>StartCorner</i> attribute contains an identification of the corner of the presentation area where the text rendering should start.</p> <p>This attribute may be ignored if a coded representation of the text itself has the same functionality to specify this type of rendering. The application domain based on this Recommendation shall define each ContentHook for which the attribute is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional attribute – One of <i>upper-left</i>   <i>upper-right</i>   <i>lower-left</i>   <i>lower-right</i>.</li> <li>• Default value: <i>upper-left</i>.</li> </ul>
TextWrapping	<p>Indicate whether the text is wrapped at the end of the line, or whether it is clipped.</p> <p>If the TextWrapping attribute is set to True, the text is wrapped. If it is set to False, it is clipped.</p> <p>This attribute may be ignored if a coded representation of the text itself has the same functionality to specify this type of rendering. The application domain based on this Recommendation shall define each ContentHook for which the attribute is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Boolean.</li> <li>• Default value: False.</li> </ul>

### 36.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

<i>TextData</i>	<p>Value of the textual content data of the Text object.</p> <p>If the <i>Content</i> attribute of the Text object is an IncludedContent, <i>TextData</i> is initially set to IncludedContent.</p>
-----------------	--

If the *Content* attribute of the Text object is a reference to an external data source, *TextData* is initially set to an OctetString representing the content of this external data source. In this case, the value of the ContentHook attribute might be used to format the value of *TextData*.

- OctetString.
- Initial value: IncludedContent or the content of a ReferencedContent.

### *Font*

Font to use when presenting the Text object.

The *Font* attribute represents either a name for a font (which is resident in the MHEG-5 engine) or a reference to a Font object. In both cases, the indicated font shall be used for rendering the Text object.

NOTE – The *Font* attribute provides the initial font for a Text object. In addition, the text encoding format may contain escape sequences to switch between fonts.

- Optional attribute.
- OctetString representing a FontName, or reference to a Font object.
- Initial value: Value of the OriginalFont attribute.

## 36.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 36.3 Internal behaviours

The internal behaviours of this class have the same semantics as for its base class.

## 36.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics, except for SetData. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

SetData                      Execute synchronously the following actions:

- 1) Update the value of the *TextData* internal attribute of the target Text.
- 2) Execute the SetData action as defined in the Presentable class.

Provisions of use and syntax description are provided in the Ingredient class.

GetTextContent  
(*TextContentVar*)            Set the Variable referenced by *TextContentVar* to the value of the *Content* attribute.

NOTE – If the *Content* attribute of the Text object is included, *TextContentVar* returns the text OctetString; if the *Content* attribute of the Text object is referenced, *TextContentVar* returns that object reference.

Provisions of use:

- *TextContentVar* shall refer to an active OctetStringVariable object or an active ContentRefVariable object.
- The *Target* object shall be an available Text object.

Syntax description:

GetTextContent	-->	Target , TextContentVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
TextContentVar	-->	ObjectReference

GetTextData  
(TextDataVar)

Set the Variable referenced by *TextDataVar* to the value of the *TextData* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- *TextDataVar* shall refer to an active OctetString object.
- The *Target* object shall be an available Text object.

Syntax description:

GetTextData	-->	Target , TextDataVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
TextDataVar	-->	ObjectReference

SetFontRef  
(NewFont)

Change the character font used to present a text.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the *Font* attribute to *NewFont*.
- 2) If the target Text object is active, redraw the target object immediately by taking into account the new value of *Font* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

*NewFont* might be a reference to a Font object or a font name. This Recommendation does not define how font names are managed by the MHEG-5 engine.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Text object.
- If *NewFont* references a Font object, this Font object shall be available.

Syntax description:

SetFontRef	-->	Target , NewFont
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewFont	-->	NewFontName   NewFontReference
NewFontName	-->	GenericOctetString
NewFontReference	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 36.5 Formal description

Text Class	--> Visible Class, OriginalFont?, FontAttributes?, TextColour?, BackgroundColour?, CharacterSet?, HorizontalJustification?, VerticalJustification?, LineOrientation?, StartCorner?, TextWrapping?
OriginalFont	--> OctetString   ObjectReference
FontAttributes	--> OctetString
TextColour	--> Colour
BackgroundColour	--> Colour
CharacterSet	--> INTEGER
HorizontalJustification	--> start   end   centre   justified
VerticalJustification	--> start   end   centre   justified
LineOrientation	--> vertical   horizontal
StartCorner	--> upper-left   upper-right   lower-left   lower-right
TextWrapping	--> BOOLEAN

## 37 Stream Class

Description: Defines the behaviour of a composition of continuous media (Video, Audio and RTGraphics) that are presented in synchronization

Base class: Presentable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 37.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 37.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	Either this attribute or its corresponding default attribute in the Application class (StreamContentHook) is mandatory for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute is mandatory for this class. It contains a reference to a whole multiplex of synchronised media.

### 37.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

- Multiplex** List of inclusion of Video, Audio and RTGraphics objects that are intended to be presented simultaneously. These are called StreamComponents below. Each stream component has a tag, which is used to identify it uniquely within the stream.
- The *InitiallyActive* attribute of each StreamComponent determines whether the corresponding elementary stream is automatically played as a result of the Stream multiplex being activated for the first time.
- Note that all behaviour associated with synchronization is always accessed via the Stream class; for example, it is not possible to target the SetCounterPosition action to an Audio object.
- Sequence of inclusions of Video, Audio and RT-Graphics objects.
- Storage** Indicate whether the composition of continuous media is loaded into memory before rendering or if it is presented directly off the stream coming, for instance, from a server. For the MHEG-5 engine, the difference in handling is that in the *memory* case, the MHEG-5 engine shall synchronise the stream, whereas in the *stream* case, the stream is synchronised by the server.
- Optional attribute – One of *memory* / *stream*.
  - Default value: *stream*.
- Looping** Number of performances of the Stream object.
- In the counting of loops, actual counting takes place as the Stream reaches its end. As a result SetCounterPosition action shall be interpreted in a given loop.
- When a Stream is played and stopped before all the loops are done, the next play action shall continue from that loop (and from that CounterPosition, unless it is set by a specific action); in other words, the attribute Looping shall represent the total number of loops.
- When a Stream has reached the end of all loops and is stopped, a new activation shall play the Stream as if it were activated for the first time, that is, looping according to the Looping attribute.
- Optional Integer.
  - Default value: 1.
  - Special value: 0 means *infinity*.

### 37.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

- Speed** Rate at which the composition of continuous media is presented.
- The *Speed* attribute is a rational number, represented as two Integers (*a*, *b*). Speed is defined as *a/b*. The semantics of the following values differ depending on whether the MHEG-5 engine has access to an underlying layer to support trick modes.

NOTE – Trick modes might be provided by the ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC protocol.

	No trick mode	Trick mode
-1/1	Treated as 0	Reverse Play backwards at normal speed
0/1	Stop Freeze at current position	Stop Freeze at current position
1/1	Normal play Play from a point that is not under the control of the MHEG-5 engine	Normal play Play from the point where the stream was when it left its previous mode

Other values of Speed are allowed (e.g. 1/2 or 2/1) in trick mode. In the case of no trick mode, such other value of Speed shall be treated as normal play (1/1) when they are positive and as stop (0/1) when they are negative or null.

- Pair of Integers: A Numerator and an optional Denominator that defaults to 1.
- Default value: 1/1.

*CounterPosition*

Current temporal position of the Stream within the duration of a stream at normal speed.

This attribute is expressed in StreamCounterUnits.

The actual definition of the StreamCounterUnit is out of the scope of this Recommendation.

- Integer.
- Default value: 0.

*CounterEndPosition*

Position of the last frame of a stream played at normal speed. The stream will stop automatically when it hits this position. The *StreamStopped* event is generated.

This attribute is expressed in StreamCounterUnits.

The actual definition of the StreamCounterUnit is out of the scope of this Recommendation.

- Integer.
- Default value: -1, meaning EndOfStream.

*CounterTriggers* List of values representing the counter positions of the Stream where the stream player shall generate *CounterTrigger* events for this Stream.

Each trigger has a unique identifier within the *CounterTriggers* list and a counter position expressed in *StreamCounterUnits*.

- Sequence of the following data structures:
  - trigger identifier: Integer;
  - counter position: Integer.
- Initial value: Empty sequence.

## 37.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following events are defined:

*StreamEvent* This event is automatically generated by the Stream player when the Stream multiplex crosses a specific marker. The marker is recognised on the basis of a tag that may be encoded within the Stream content data structure. There might be several markers with the same identity along a Stream multiplex.

- Associated data: *StreamEventTag* – *OctetString*.

NOTE 1 – According to the semantics of the *Link* class, a *Link* set to trigger on *StreamEvents* from a specific stream object that does not have its *EventData* set will trigger on all *StreamEvents* from that object.

NOTE 2 – The encoding of *StreamEvents* may be done using the ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC protocol.

*StreamPlaying* This event is generated when a Stream multiplex has started playing. More specifically, it is generated simultaneously with the first piece of content data (video frame, audio sample) being presented to the user.

- No associated data.

*StreamStopped* This event is generated when a Stream multiplex has stopped playing. More specifically, it is generated as soon as the last piece of content data (video frame, audio sample) has been presented to the user. Note that the *RunningStatus* of the Stream object is not affected by the occurrence of a *StreamStopped* event.

- No associated data.

*CounterTrigger* This event is automatically generated by the Stream player when the *CounterPosition* of the Stream object crosses a value set with the *SetCounterTrigger* action. There might be several *CounterTriggers* triggered at the same counter position of a Stream.

- Associated data: *TriggerIdentifier* – Integer.

NOTE – The encoding of counter position within the stream may be done using the ISO/IEC 13818-6 DSM-CC protocol.

### 37.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviours semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Preparation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the first three steps of the *Preparation* behaviour as defined in the Root class.
- 2) Apply the *Activation* behaviour to all StreamComponents of the Stream that have the InitiallyActive attribute set to True, in the order they appear in the Stream Multiplex.
- 3) Apply steps four to six of the *Preparation* behaviour as defined in the Root class.

*Destruction* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour to all StreamComponents of the Stream, in the reverse order they appear in the Stream Multiplex.
- 2) Apply the *Destruction* behaviour as defined in the base class.

*Activation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Activation* behaviour as defined in the base class.
- 2) Start playing all active StreamComponents.
- 3) Set the *RunningStatus* attribute to True and generate an *IsRunning* event.

The Activation and Deactivation of StreamComponents like Audio, Video or RTGraphics corresponds to enabling or disabling them in a stream. For instance when a Stream plays, activating an Audio shall make that component audible (in addition to the others).

*Deactivation* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the RunningStatus attribute of the object is False, ignore the behaviour; otherwise:
- 2) Stop playing all active StreamComponents.
- 3) Execute *Deactivation* behaviour as defined in the base class.

### 37.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

*SetData* The SetData action as defined in the Ingredient Class shall only be executed when the stream is inactive.

*Clone* Clone shall not be targeted to Stream.

SetCounterTrigger  
(TriggerIdentifier,  
NewCounterValue)

Update the list of CounterTriggers of a Stream object.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Update the set of triggers of the *CounterTriggers* list of the target Stream, according to the following rules:
  - a) If *TriggerIdentifier* is the identifier of an existing trigger in *CounterTriggers*, the new trigger replaces the previous one.
  - b) If there is no trigger with identifier *TriggerIdentifier* in *CounterTriggers*, insert a new trigger with identifier *TriggerIdentifier* and value *NewCounterValue* in *CounterTriggers*.
  - c) If *NewCounterValue* is not encoded and there is a trigger with identifier *TriggerIdentifier* in *CounterTriggers*, remove this trigger from the *CounterTriggers* list.
  - d) If *NewCounterValue* is not encoded and there is no trigger with identifier *TriggerIdentifier* in *CounterTriggers*, discard this action.
- 2) If the target Stream object is active, the MHEG-5 engine shall generate *CounterTrigger* events according to the new value of the *CounterTriggers* list.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Stream object.

Syntax description:

SetCounterTrigger	-->	Target , TriggerIdentifier , NewCounterValue?
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
TriggerIdentifier	-->	GenericInteger
NewCounterValue	-->	GenericInteger

SetSpeed  
(NewSpeed)

Change the presentation speed of a stream.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the value of the *Speed* attribute of the target Stream object to *NewSpeed*.
- 2) If the target Stream is active, update immediately the rendering of the stream by taking into account the new value of the *Speed* attribute.

The *NewSpeed* attribute is defined as a ratio Numerator/Denominator.

NOTE 1 – As mentioned earlier, in a broadcast environment, play and stop shall start when possible in the broadcasted stream. In other cases, setting new speed (including normal play and stop) shall take place at the current counter position, or as close to it as possible (e.g. next I-frame). Counter position can be set by the appropriate action.

NOTE 2 – If *Trick Modes* are not supported by the engine, the value of *Speed* can still be set to any value, the engine will interpret them as explained in the *Speed* internal attribute.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Stream object.

Syntax description:

SetSpeed	-->	Target , NewSpeed
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewSpeed	-->	Rational
Rational	-->	Numerator , Denominator?
Numerator	-->	GenericInteger
Denominator	-->	GenericInteger

SetCounterPosition  
(*NewCounterPosition*)

Change the current position within a stream.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the MHEG-5 engine is not provided with an underlying presentation layer that supports trick modes, discard this action.
- 2) Set the value of the *CounterPosition* attribute of the target Stream to *NewCounterPosition*.
- 3) If the target Stream is active, skip immediately to the new position without changing the *RunningStatus* of the target Stream.

NOTE – Stream events are not generated because of a SetCounterPosition action.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Stream object.
- *NewCounterPosition* shall indicate a valid position within the target Stream.

Syntax description:

SetCounterPosition	-->	Target , NewCounterPosition
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewCounterPosition	-->	GenericInteger

SetCounterEndPosition  
(NewCounterEndPosition)

Change the end position of a stream.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the MHEG-5 engine is not provided with an underlying presentation layer that supports trick modes, discard this action.
- 2) Set the value of the *CounterEndPosition* attribute of the target Stream to *NewCounterEndPosition*.
- 3) If the target Stream is active and *NewCounterEndPosition* is already passed, stop the target Stream.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Stream object.
- *NewCounterPosition* shall indicate a valid position within the target Stream.

Syntax description:

SetCounterPosition	-->	Target , NewCounterPosition
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewCounterPosition	-->	GenericInteger

### 37.5 Formal description

Stream Class	-->	Presentable Class , Multiplex , Storage? , Looping?
Multiplex	-->	StreamComponent+
StreamComponent	-->	Audio class   Video class   RTGraphics class
Storage	-->	
Looping	-->	

## 38 Audio Class

Description: Defines the attributes and behaviour of an elementary audio stream of a Stream multiplex. The Audio object shall be a StreamComponent of a Stream object.

Base class: Presentable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 38.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 38.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
RunningStatus	Root	This attribute expresses that this object is enabled or disabled to play when the Stream object containing it is active. The object is only played when this attribute is True and the RunningStatus of the Stream is True.
ContentHook, OriginalContent, Shared	Ingredient	These attributes shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 38.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

**OriginalVolume**      Volume of the Audio object when it is first available.

The OriginalVolume attribute is expressed in dB, where 0 dB is defined to be the standard volume for playing back audio. The precise accuracy of the volume rendering is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: 0.

**ComponentTag**      A unique identifier for the elementary audio stream within a stream of multiplexed media.

- Integer.

#### 38.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

**Volume**      Current volume of the Audio object, defined in the same way as OriginalVolume.

- Integer.
- Initial value: *OriginalVolume*.

### 38.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 38.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines no additional internal behaviours.

### 38.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**SetDataClone**            The SetData action as defined in the Ingredient Class shall only be executed when the Audio is inactive.

**Clone**                    Clone shall not be targeted to Audio.

**SetVolume**                Change the volume of an audio.  
(*NewVolume*)

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1)        Set the *Volume* attribute of the target Audio object to *NewVolume*.
- 2)        If the elementary audio stream identified by the *ComponentTag* attribute is being played, update the rendering of the Audio by taking into account the new *Volume*.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Audio object.

Syntax description:

SetVolume	-->	Target , NewVolume
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewVolume	-->	GenericInteger

**GetVolume**                Return the volume of an Audio.

(*VolumeVar*)

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Audio object.
- *VolumeVar* shall be an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetVolume	-->	Target , VolumeVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
VolumeVar	-->	ObjectReference

### 38.5 Formal description

Audio Class	-->	Presentable Class , ComponentTag OriginalVolume?
ComponentTag	-->	INTEGER
OriginalVolume	-->	INTEGER

## 39 Video Class

Description:	Defines the attributes and behaviour of an elementary video stream of a Stream multiplex. The Video object shall be a StreamComponent of a Stream object.
Base class:	Visible
Subclasses:	None
Status:	Concrete class

### 39.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 39.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
RunningStatus	Root	This attribute expresses that this object is enabled or disabled to play when the Stream object containing it is active. The object is only played when this attribute is True and the RunningStatus of the Stream is True.
ContentHook, OriginalContent, Shared	Ingredient	These attributes shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalPaletteRef	Visible	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 39.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

Termination	This attribute indicates whether the last frame of the video shall disappear when the presentation of the video finishes, or whether it shall freeze. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional attribute – One of <i>freeze</i>   <i>disappear</i>.</li><li>• Default value: <i>disappear</i>.</li></ul>
ComponentTag	A unique identifier for the elementary video stream within a stream of multiplexed media. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Integer.</li></ul>

#### 39.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 39.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 39.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines no additional internal behaviours.

### 39.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**SetData**                      The SetData action as defined in the Ingredient Class shall only be executed when the Video is inactive.

**Clone**                        Clone shall not be targeted to Video.

**ScaleVideo**  
(*XScale, YScale*)              If the MHEG-5 engine implements the Scaling option, the effect of this action is to adapt the rendering of the Video so that it fits to the *XScale* and *YScale* dimensions.

*XScale* and *YScale* parameters represent the final dimensions of the Video in pixel numbers. Thus, the graphical representation of the Video may not keep its original aspect ratio.

Note that this action does not affect the *BoxSize* internal attribute of the Video object.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Video object.
- *XScale* and *YScale* shall be positive Integers.

Syntax description:

ScaleVideo	-->	Target , XScale, YScale
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
XScale, YScale	-->	GenericInteger

### 39.5 Formal description

Video Class	-->	Visible Class , ComponentTag Termination?
Termination	-->	freeze   disappear
ComponentTag	-->	INTEGER

## 40 RTGraphics Class

Description:	Defines the attributes and behaviour of non-persistent graphics objects, defined as of an elementary stream of a Stream multiplex. The RTGraphics object shall be a StreamComponent of a Stream object.
Base class:	Visible
Subclasses:	None
Status:	Concrete class

### 40.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 40.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
RunningStatus	Root	This attribute expresses that this object is enabled or disabled to play when the Stream object containing it is active. The object is only played when this attribute is True and the RunningStatus of the Stream is True.
ContentHook, OriginalContent, Shared	Ingredient	These attributes shall not be encoded for this class.

#### 40.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

ComponentTag	A unique identifier for the elementary RTGraphics stream within a stream of multiplexed media. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Integer.</li></ul>
Termination	This attribute indicates whether the last image of the graphics shall disappear when the presentation finishes, or whether it shall freeze. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Optional attribute – One of <i>freeze</i>   <i>disappear</i>.</li><li>Default value: <i>disappear</i>.</li></ul>

#### 40.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 40.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 40.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines no additional internal behaviours.

#### 40.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**SetData**                      The SetData action as defined in the Ingredient Class shall only be executed when the RTGraphics is inactive.

**Clone**                         Clone shall not be targeted to RTGraphics.

#### 40.5 Formal description

RTGraphics Class	-->	Visible Class, ComponentTag Termination?
ComponentTag	-->	INTEGER
Termination	-->	freeze   disappear

### 41 Interactable Class

**Description:**                 Defines functionality associated with an interaction behaviour of Visibles

**Base class:**                  None (mix-in class)

**Subclasses:**                 Slider, HyperText, EntryField, Button

**Status:**                        Abstract class

#### 41.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

##### 41.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has no inherited attributes.

##### 41.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following exchanged attributes:

**EngineResp**                    Determines where the responsibility lies for generating visual feedback to the user as the result of changes to the internal attribute *HighlightStatus*.

If *EngineResp* is set to True, the MHEG-5 engine shall generate visual feedback to the user when there is a state change in the internal attribute *HighlightStatus*. When *EngineResp* is set to False, the engine shall generate no such visual feedback.

The exact nature of the visual feedback is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional Boolean.
- Default value: True.

**HighlightRef-Colour** Reference colour for visual feedback generated when the *HighlightStatus* attribute is True. The actual colour used for rendering the highlight is outside the scope of this Recommendation; however, it is recommended that an MHEG-5 engine attempts to render the highlight using *HighlightRefColour*.

If the *OriginalPaletteRef* attribute is encoded, the *HighlightRefColour* attribute shall be a zero-based index of a colour in the colour look-up table defined by that Palette. Otherwise, it shall be an OctetString encoding an actual colour.

- Optional Integer or OctetString.
- Default value: Value encoded by Application.

### 41.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following internal attributes:

*HighlightStatus* This attribute is associated with a certain type of visual feedback to the user.

When both *HighlightStatus* and *EngineResp* are True, the MHEG-5 engine shall generate a visual feedback to the user, for instance in the form of a line drawn around the Interactable object. In all other cases, no such feedback shall be generated. For the generation of this visual feedback, the *HighlightRefColour* may be used.

NOTE 1 – Although this visual feedback itself does not change the behaviour of the object, this attribute may be used to signal to the user that the Interactable is ready to be interacted with, for instance in an implementation of jumping-highlight navigation.

NOTE 2 – The only way to change the *HighlightStatus* attribute is through the *SetHighlightStatus* action.

- Boolean value.
- Initial value: False.

*InteractionStatus* This attribute describes whether or not the Interactable is currently being interacted with.

If *InteractionStatus* is False, the Interactable is not currently being interacted with by the user. Handling of user input events takes place normally. See clause 53.

If *InteractionStatus* is True, the Interactable is currently being interacted with by the user. As a consequence, no events of the type *UserInput* will be generated by the active Scene object. These events shall be handled directly by the Interactable.

At any time, at most one Interactable shall have its *InteractionStatus* set to True.

NOTE 1 – The only way to change the *InteractionStatus* internal attribute is by using the *SetInteractionStatus* action.

NOTE 2 – Although Links that trigger on UserInput events cannot fire when the *InteractionStatus* internal attribute is True, other Links may still fire. This makes it possible, for instance, to implement time-outs for the interaction process.

- Boolean value.
- Initial value: False.

## 41.2 Events

This class defines the following events:

*Interaction-Completed* This event is generated as a result of a change in an Interactable. The event is generated only once per interaction, i.e. it is generated only when the *InteractionStatus* internal attribute returns to False after an interaction.

- No associated data.

*HighlightOn* This event is generated when the *HighlightStatus* attribute of the Interactable changes from False to True.

- No associated data.

*HighlightOff* This event is generated when the *HighlightStatus* attribute of the Interactable changes from True to False.

- No associated data.

*CursorEnter* This event is generated automatically by the MHEG-5 engine if, and only if:

- 1) the engine implements the Free Moving Cursor option;
- 2) the moving cursor has entered the area defined by the Interactable;
- 3) the Interactable is active.

NOTE – See 53.6 for more details on the generation of *CursorLeave* and *CursorEnter* events.

*CursorLeave* This event is generated automatically by the MHEG-5 engine if, and only if:

- 1) the engine implements the Free Moving Cursor option;
- 2) the moving cursor has left the area defined by the Interactable;
- 3) the Interactable is active.

NOTE – See 53.6 on main mechanisms for more details on the generation of *CursorLeave* and *CursorEnter* events.

### 41.3 Internal behaviours

This class defines the following internal behaviour:

*Interaction* Execute the following steps synchronously:

- 1) Set the *InteractionStatus* internal attribute to True.
- 2) Generate visual feedback to the user that signals the fact that the Interactable may now be interacted with.

NOTE – Most of the Interactable subclasses expand on this behaviour.

### 41.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class defines the following applicable MHEG-5 actions:

SetInteraction-  
Status  
(*NewInteraction-  
Status*) This action is used to influence the *InteractionStatus* internal attribute.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If *NewInteractionStatus* is set to True:
  - a) If the target Interactable or any other Interactable in the current Scene has its *InteractionStatus* attribute set to True, discard the action. Otherwise:
  - b) Apply the *Interaction* behaviour of the target Interactable.
- 2) If *NewInteractionStatus* is set to False:
  - a) If the target Interactable has its *InteractionStatus* set to False, discard the action. Otherwise:
  - b) Immediately interrupt the *Interaction* behaviour that is taking place for the target Interactable. The state of the target Interactable after the *Interaction* behaviour is interrupted shall reflect any interaction which has taken place up to the point where the interaction was interrupted.
  - c) Generate the *InteractionCompleted* event.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an active Interactable object.

Syntax description:

SetInteractionStatus	-->	Target ,
		NewInteractionStatus
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewInteractionStatus	-->	GenericBoolean

GetInteraction-  
Status  
(*InteractionStatus-  
Var*) Set the Variable referenced by *InteractionStatusVar* to the value of the *InteractionStatus* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be available.
- *InteractionStatusVar* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetInteractionStatus	-->	Target , InteractionStatusVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
InteractionStatusVar	-->	ObjectReference

SetHighlight-  
Status  
(*NewHighlight-  
Status*)

Change the highlighted state of an Interactable.

Execute synchronously the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If the current *HighlightStatus* is equal to *NewHighlightStatus*, discard the action. Otherwise:
- 2) Set the *HighlightStatus* attribute of the target Interactable to *NewHighlightStatus*.
- 3) If the target Interactable is active, if *EngineResp* is set to True and if *HighlightStatus* is set to True, redraw the target Interactable to present the visual feedback associated to the highlighted state.
- 4) If the target Interactable is active, if *EngineResp* is set to True and if *HighlightStatus* is set to False, redraw the target Interactable to remove the visual feedback associated to the highlighted state.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Interactable object.

Syntax description:

SetHighlightStatus	-->	Target , NewHighlightStatus
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewHighlightStatus	-->	GenericBoolean

GetHighlight-  
Status  
(*HighlightStatus-  
Var*)

Set the Variable referenced by *HighlightStatusVar* to the value of the *HighlightStatus* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be available.
- *HighlightStatusVar* shall refer to an active BooleanVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetHighlightStatus	-->	Target , HighlightStatusVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
HighlightStatusVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 41.5 Formal description

Interactable Class	-->	EngineResp?, HighlightRefColour?,
EngineResp	-->	BOOLEAN
HighlightRefColour	-->	Colour

## 42 Slider Class

Description: Defines an interaction widget used to set a position within a linear range

Base classes: Visible, Interactable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 42.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 42.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
<i>BoxSize, Position</i>	Visible	In addition to defining the bounding box of the Slider, these attributes also define the actual size of the Slider. This size shall be such that the Slider completely fills its bounding box.

#### 42.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

Orientation Orientation of the main axis of the Slider.

The orientation specifies the direction in which the Slider moves from the minimum towards the maximum value.

Although the exact rendering of the Slider object is not specified in detail by this Recommendation, it shall be rendered such that its orientation conforms to this attribute.

- Possible values: *left / right / up / down*

InitialValue The initial value of the Slider, i.e. the value it has when it is first activated after it has been prepared.

The value shall be an Integer and it shall be consistent with MinValue, MaxValue, and StepSize in the manner described below.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: MinValue.

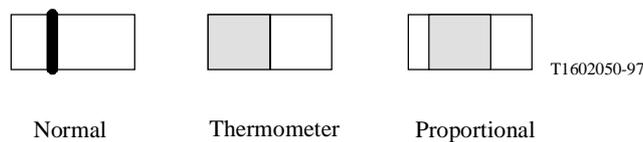
MinValue	<p>Lowest value that the <i>SliderValue</i> attribute may be set to.</p> <p>The value shall be consistent with InitialValue, MaxValue, and StepSize in the manner described below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: 1.</li> </ul>
MaxValue	<p>Greatest value that the <i>SliderValue</i> attribute may be set to.</p> <p>The value shall be consistent with InitialValue, MinValue, and StepSize in the manner described below.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Integer value.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
InitialPortion	<p>Represents a portion of the range [MinValue, MaxValue]. This value shall be smaller than or equal to the number (MaxValue – MinValue).</p> <p>This value shall be encoded if and only if the value of the SliderStyle attribute is <i>proportional</i>, in which case the following double inequality is always True:</p> $\text{MinValue} \leq \text{InitialValue} \leq \text{MaxValue} - \text{InitialPortion}$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: None.</li> </ul>
StepSize	<p>The smallest value by which the value of the <i>SliderValue</i> internal attribute may be increased or decreased.</p> <p>The value shall be a positive Integer, and it shall be consistent with InitialValue, MinValue, and MaxValue in the following manner:</p> <p>All values that the slider may take are expressed as:</p> $v_i = \text{MinValue} + i \times \text{StepSize},$ <p>where <math>i \in \{0 .. (\text{MaxValue} - \text{MinValue})/\text{StepSize}\}</math>.</p> <p>The attributes InitialValue, MinValue, MaxValue and StepSize shall conform to the following criteria:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">InitialValue = MinValue + M × StepSize, for some <math>M \in \{0 .. (\text{MaxValue} - \text{MinValue})/\text{StepSize}\}</math>.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">MinValue &lt; MaxValue</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><math>N \times \text{StepSize} = (\text{MaxValue} - \text{MinValue})</math>, where N is some positive Integer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Optional Integer.</li> <li>• Default value: 1.</li> </ul>

## SliderStyle

This attribute may take the value *normal*, *thermometer*, and *proportional*. The *SliderStyle* attribute influences the rendering of the Slider in the following way:

- If the *SliderStyle* is set to *normal*, the Slider is rendered as a «marker», which is positioned on a «main axis» at the position corresponding to the *SliderValue* attribute.
- If the *SliderStyle* is set to *thermometer*, the Slider is rendered as a «main axis», which is filled from its beginning to the position corresponding to the *SliderValue* attribute.
- If the *SliderStyle* is set to *proportional*, the Slider is rendered as a «main axis», which is filled from the position corresponding to the *SliderValue* attribute to the position corresponding to the sum of the *SliderValue* and the *Portion* internal attributes.

This Recommendation does not specify exactly what this rendering should look like. The following picture is provided by way of example only:



**Figure 13/T.172 – Examples of Sliders in different *SliderStyles***

- Optional attribute.
- Possible values: *normal* | *thermometer* | *proportional*.
- Default value: *normal* – Specify a colour that may be used by the engine to render the Slider object.

## SliderColour

The *SliderColour* value is expressed either as an absolute colour value or as a zero-based index in a colour look-up table. In the latter case, the Slider object must have the *PaletteRef* attribute encoded, which is then used to translate the index to an actual colour value.

Exactly how this colour is used to render the Slider is not specified by this Recommendation. It is provided as a hint to the MHEG-5 engine on the colour scheme to use when rendering the Slider.

The actual colour resolution in the rendering process is outside the scope of this Recommendation.

- Optional attribute.
- Default value: Value encoded by Application.

### 42.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

<i>SliderValue</i>	The current value of the slider.
<i>Portion</i>	<p>The current value of the attribute that governs the rendering of the Slider when the <i>SliderStyle</i> is <i>proportional</i>.</p> <p>If the <i>SliderStyle</i> is set to <i>proportional</i>, the Slider is rendered as a «main axis» which is filled from the position corresponding to the <i>SliderValue</i> attribute to the position corresponding to the sum of the <i>SliderValue</i> and the <i>Portion</i> internal attributes.</p>

### 42.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 42.3 Internal behaviour

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

<i>Interaction</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) Apply the <i>Interaction</i> behaviour as defined in the Interactable class.</li><li>2) Allow the user to interact with the Slider object by moving the marker along the main axis. Exactly how this user interaction takes place is not specified by this Recommendation. However, the smallest marker displacement shall be proportional to the value of the <i>StepSize</i> attribute.</li><li>3) When the marker has stopped at a new position:<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a) set the <i>SliderValue</i> attribute to a value that corresponds to the new marker position;</li><li>b) set the <i>InteractionStatus</i> attribute to False; and</li><li>c) generate an <i>InteractionCompleted</i> event.</li></ol></li></ol>
--------------------	---

### 42.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base classes, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

<i>Step</i>	Set a new value to a slider relatively to its current value.
<i>(NbOfSteps)</i>	<p>Execute the following sequence of actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1) If <i>NbOfSteps</i> is positive, increase the value of <i>SliderValue</i> by <math>NbOfSteps \times StepSize</math>.</li><li>2) If <i>NbOfSteps</i> is negative, decrease the value of <i>SliderValue</i> by <math>NbOfSteps \times StepSize</math>.</li></ol>

- 3) If the target Slider is active, redraw the Slider using the new value of *SliderValue* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.
- 4) Generate an *InteractionCompleted* event.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Slider object.
- *NbOfSteps* shall be set so that:

$$\text{MinValue} \leq (\text{NbOfSteps} \times \text{StepSize}) + \text{SliderValue}$$

and:

$$(\text{NbOfSteps} \times \text{StepSize}) + \text{SliderValue} + \text{Portion} \leq \text{MaxValue}$$

The value of *Portion* in the expressions above shall be taken to be 0 if the *SliderStyle* is not proportional.

Syntax description:

Step	-->	Target , NbOfSteps
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NbOfSteps	-->	GenericInteger

**SetSliderValue**  
(*NewSliderValue*)

Set an absolute value to a slider.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *SliderValue* attribute of the target Slider to *NewSliderValue*.
- 2) If the target Slider is active, redraw the Slider taking into account the new value of *SliderValue* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.
- 3) Generate an *InteractionCompleted* event.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Slider object.  
*NewSliderValue* shall be within the range [MinValue, MaxValue-Portion].  
The value of *Portion* in the expression above shall be taken to be 0 if the *SliderStyle* is not proportional.
- (*NewSliderValue* – MinValue) MOD StepSize shall be equal to 0.

Syntax description:

SetSliderValue	-->	Target , NewSliderValue
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewSliderValue	-->	GenericInteger

GetSliderValue  
(SliderValueVar)

Set the Variable referenced by *SliderValueVar* to the value of the *SliderValue* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Slider object.
- *SliderValueVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetSliderValue	-->	Target , SliderValueVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
SliderValueVar	-->	ObjectReference

SetPortion  
(NewPortion)

Set the size of the portion represented by a slider of style *proportional*.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *Portion* attribute of the target Slider to *NewPortion*.
- 2) If the target Slider is active, redraw the Slider according to the new value of *Portion* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.
- 3) Generate an *InteractionCompleted* event.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Slider object of style *proportional*.
- *NewPortion* shall be smaller than or equal to (MaxValue – SliderValue)

Syntax description:

SetPortion	-->	Target , NewPortion
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewPortion	-->	GenericInteger

GetPortion  
(PortionVar)

Set the Variable referenced by *PortionVar* to the value of the *Portion* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Slider object of style *proportional*.
- *PortionVar* shall refer to an active IntegerVariable object.

### Syntax description:

GetPortion	-->	Target , PortionVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
PortionVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 42.5 Formal description

Slider Class	-->	Visible Class , Interactable Class , Orientation , Max Value , Min Value? , InitialValue? , InitialPortion? , StepSize? , SliderStyle? , SliderColour?
Orientation	-->	left   right   up   down
InitialValue	-->	INTEGER
InitialPortion	-->	INTEGER
Min Value	-->	INTEGER
Max Value	-->	INTEGER
StepSize	-->	INTEGER
SliderStyle	-->	normal   thermometer   proportional
SliderColour	-->	Colour

## 43 EntryField Class

Description: Defines an interaction widget used by the final user to edit and/or modify a text

Base classes: Text, Interactable

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 43.1 Attributes

This subclass defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 43.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the same semantics.

### 43.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

InputType	<p>Type of allowed characters.</p> <p>If this attribute is set to <i>alpha</i>, only characters that are not digits (i.e. 0123456789) shall be accepted as entries. If this attribute is set to <i>numeric</i>, only characters that are digits shall be accepted as being entries. If this attribute is set to <i>any</i>, all characters shall be accepted. If this attribute is set to <i>listed</i>, only such characters shall be accepted that are provided in the CharList attribute of the EntryField. This provides a possibility to customize the input filter.</p> <p>NOTE – The value <i>any</i> also allows for entry of symbols (e.g. &amp;*\$#@!).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Possible values: <i>alpha</i> / <i>numeric</i> / <i>any</i> / <i>listed</i>.</li><li>• Default value: <i>any</i>.</li></ul>
CharList	<p>Characters that might be entered in this EntryField.</p> <p>This attribute shall always be encoded when InputType is set to <i>listed</i>. Otherwise, it shall not be encoded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional OctetString.</li><li>• Default value: None.</li></ul>
ObscuredInput	<p>Indicate how to echo back input characters. This may be used for password input.</p> <p>If this attribute is set to True, the entered characters shall be echoed back to the screen in an unreadable form. Otherwise, the entered characters shall be echoed back to the screen in a readable form.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional Boolean value.</li><li>• Default value: False.</li></ul>
MaxLength	<p>Provide the maximum number of expected input characters. When this maximum number of characters is reached in the EntryField, an EntryFieldFull event is generated.</p> <p>If <i>MaxLength</i> is set to 0, the number of expected characters is undefined. In this case, the MHEG-5 engine shall provide the user with some means of terminating the interaction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Optional Integer.</li><li>• Default value: 0.</li></ul>

### 43.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attributes:

*EntryPoint* Define (as a zero-based index) where the next character to be entered in the EntryField shall be placed.

- If this attribute is equal to 0, the next character shall be placed before the first character of the EntryField.
- If this attribute is equal to or greater than the length of the text currently in the EntryField, the next character shall be attached to the end of the EntryField.
- For all other values  $n$  of this attribute, the next character shall be inserted after the  $n^{\text{th}}$  character of the EntryField.

- Integer value.
- Initial value: 0.

*OverwriteMode* Determine whether new input characters overwrite characters in the existing text or are inserted between them.

If this attribute is True, each character entered in the EntryField replaces (overwrites) the character that was previously located at the *EntryPoint*; all other characters are untouched.

If this attribute is False, the entry is inserted just before the character located at the *EntryPoint*.

If the *EntryPoint* is set to a value equal to or greater than the length of the text of the EntryField, the characters that are entered are attached to the end of the EntryField regardless of the value of this attribute.

- Boolean.
- Default value: False.

## 43.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following events are defined:

*Interaction-Completed* This event is generated as a result of the ending the modification process of an EntryField.

*EntryFieldFull* This event is generated when an EntryField capacity is reached. This event shall only be generated when MaxLength attribute is encoded, in which case it is generated when the number of characters in the EntryField reaches MaxLength.

The event is asynchronous.

A SetData action shall not generate EntryFieldFull events.

- No associated data.

### 43.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

- Interaction* Execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) Apply the *Interaction* behaviour as defined in the *Interactable* class.
  - 2) Allow the user to modify the *TextData* attribute of the *EntryField* object by entering characters.
  - 3) After each character is entered, update the *TextData* attribute accordingly (taking into account the value of the *EntryPoint* and *Overwrite* attributes), update the *EntryPoint* attribute.
  - 4) When the entry is complete (because the user terminates the entry or because the application terminates it using the *SetInteractionStatus* action):
    - a) set the *InteractionStatus* attribute to *False*;
    - b) generate an *InteractionCompleted* event.

### 43.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

- SetOverwrite-Mode*  
(*NewOverwrite-Mode*)
- Change an entry field to toggle to and from overwriting mode.
- Execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) If current *OverwriteMode* is equal to *NewOverwriteMode*, discard the action. Otherwise:
  - 2) Set *OverwriteMode* of the target *EntryField* to *NewOverwriteMode*.
  - 3) If the target *EntryField* is active, update the visible representation of the *EntryField* according to the new value of *OverwriteMode*.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *EntryField* object.

Syntax description:

<i>SetOverwriteMode</i>	-->	<i>Target</i> , <i>NewOverwriteMode</i>
<i>Target</i>	-->	<i>GenericObjectReference</i>
<i>NewOverwriteMode</i>	-->	<i>GenericBoolean</i>

- GetOverwrite-Mode*  
(*OverwriteMode-Var*)
- Set the *Variable* referenced by *OverwriteModeVar* to the value of the *OverwriteMode* attribute.
- Provisions of use:
- The *Target* object shall be an available *EntryField* object.
  - *OverwriteModeVar* shall refer to an active *BooleanVariable* object.

Syntax description:

GetOverwriteMode	-->	Target , OverwriteModeVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
OverwriteModeVar	-->	ObjectReference

SetEntryPoint  
(NewEntryPoint)

Change the position of the entry point of an entry field.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set *EntryPoint* of the target *EntryField* to *NewEntryPoint*.
- 2) If the target *EntryField* is active, update the visible representation of the *EntryField* according to the new value of *EntryPoint*.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *EntryField*.
- *NewEntryPoint* shall be greater than or equal to 0.

Syntax description:

SetEntryPoint	-->	Target , NewEntryPoint
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewEntryPoint	-->	GenericInteger

GetEntryPoint  
(EntryPointVar)

Set the Variable referenced by *EntryPointVar* to the value of the *EntryPoint* attribute.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available *EntryField* object.
- *EntryPointVar* shall refer to an active *IntegerVariable* object.

Syntax description:

GetEntryPoint	-->	Target , EntryPointVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
EntryPointVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 43.5 Formal description

EntryField Class	--> Text Class, Interactable Class, InputType?, CharList?, ObscuredInput?, MaxLength?
InputType	--> alpha   numeric   any   listed
CharList	--> OctetString
ObscuredInput	--> BOOLEAN
MaxLength	--> INTEGER

## 44 HyperText Class

**Description:** The HyperText class is a subclass of the Text class, with the special property of allowing for portions of the text to be associated with a piece of information. These portions of text are called *anchors* in the rest of this clause.

**Base classes:** Text, Interactable

**Subclasses:** None

**Status:** Concrete class

### 44.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 44.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base class, with the same semantics.

#### 44.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

#### 44.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*LastAnchorFired* Tag of the last anchor fired.

- OctetString.
- Initial value: Empty string.

### 44.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following event is defined:

*AnchorFired* Signal that the user has selected one of the anchors in the HyperText object.

- Associated data: The tag of the anchor that fired – OctetString.

### 44.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

- Interaction* Execute the following sequence of actions:
- 1) Apply the *Interaction* behaviour as inherited from the *Interactable* class.
  - 2) Allow the user to move the focus through the set of anchors in the *HyperText* object and to select the focused anchor. Each time an anchor is selected, an *AnchorFired* event is generated.
  - 3) When the interaction is complete (either because the user terminates the interaction or because the application terminates it using the *SetInteractionStatus* action):
    - a) set the *InteractionStatus* attribute to *False*;
    - b) generate an *InteractionCompleted* event.

### 44.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions is defined:

*GetLastAnchorFired* Set the Variable referenced by *LastAnchorFiredVar* to the value of the *LastAnchorFired* attribute.  
(*LastAnchorFiredVar*) Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Hypertext object.
- *LastAnchorFired* shall refer to an active *OctetStringValue* object.

Syntax description:

<code>GetLastAnchorFired</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>Target,</code>
		<code>LastAnchorFiredVar</code>
<code>Target</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>GenericObjectReference</code>
<code>LastAnchorFiredVar</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>ObjectReference</code>

### 44.5 Formal description

<code>HyperText Class</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>Text Class,</code>
		<code>Interactable Class</code>

## 45 Button Class

Description: Defines functionality associated with the rendering and interaction with one-state and two-state buttons

Base class: Visible, Interactable

Subclasses: Hotspot, PushButton

Status: Abstract class

## 45.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

### 45.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with the following constraints:

Attribute Name	Defined in	Constraints and requirements
ContentHook	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
OriginalContent	Ingredient	This attribute shall not be encoded for this class.
<i>InteractionStatus</i>	Interactable	This internal attribute is not defined for the Button class.
<i>BoxSize, Position</i>	Visible	In addition to defining the bounding box of the Button, these attributes also define the actual size of the Button. This size shall be such that the Button completely fills its bounding box.

### 45.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

- ButtonColour            Specify a colour that may be used by the engine to render the Button object.
- The *ButtonColour* attribute value is expressed either as an absolute colour value or as a zero-based index in a colour look-up table. In the latter case, the Button object must have the *PaletteRef* attribute encoded, which is then used to translate the index to an actual colour value.
- Exactly how this colour is used to render the Button is not specified by this Recommendation. It is provided as a hint to the MHEG-5 engine on the colour scheme to use when rendering the Button.
- The actual colour resolution in the rendering process is outside the scope of this Recommendation.
- Optional attribute.
  - Default value: Value encoded by Application.

### 45.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

- SelectionStatus*        Each button may store one bit of information. This attribute is True when the Button object is in the selected state. The selected state is entered as a result of invoking the Select action.
- Boolean value.
  - Initial value: False

## 45.2 Events

- IsSelected*            This event is generated when the *SelectionStatus* of the Button changes from False to True.
- No associated data.

*IsDeselected* This event is generated when the *SelectionStatus* of the Button changes from True to False.

- No associated data.

### 45.3 Internal behaviours

The following internal behaviour's semantics have changed from this object's base class:

*Interaction* This behaviour is not defined for the Button class.

NOTE – As a result, the Button class shall not generate any InteractionCompleted event.

*Selection* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *SelectionStatus* to True.
- 2) If the *EngineResp* attribute is True and the Button is active, redraw the Button object taking into account the new value of *SelectionStatus* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.
- 3) Generate an *IsSelected* event.

*Deselection* Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set the *SelectionStatus* to False.
- 2) If the *EngineResp* attribute is True and the Button is active, redraw the Button object taking into account the new value of *SelectionStatus* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.
- 3) Generate an *IsDeselected* event.

### 45.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

SetInteraction-Status This action shall not be targeted to a Button object.

GetInteraction-Status This action shall not be targeted to a Button object.

Select Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If *SelectionStatus* is currently set to True, disregard this action.
- 2) If *SelectionStatus* is currently set to False, apply the *Selection* behaviour of the target Button.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Button.

Syntax description:

Select	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

Deselect

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) If *SelectionStatus* is currently set to False, disregard this action.
- 2) If *SelectionStatus* is currently set to True, apply the *Deselection* behaviour of the target Button.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available Button.

Syntax description:

Deselect	-->	Target
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference

## 45.5 Formal description

Button Class	-->	Visible Class, Interactable Class, ButtonColour?
ButtonColour	-->	Colour

## 46 Hotspot Class

Description: Defines invisible unlabelled rectangular areas on the screen that may interact with the user to produce *IsSelected* events

Base class: Button

Subclasses: None

Status: Concrete class

### 46.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 46.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with identical semantics, except for the following attribute:

*SelectionStatus* Rendering of a Hotspot object shall depend on the *SelectionStatus* attribute. When the *SelectionStatus* attribute and the EngineResp are both True, the Hotspot shall be rendered in a way that signals to the user that selection has taken place. For this rendering process, the attribute ButtonColour may be used. In all other cases, the Hotspot shall have no visual rendering except such rendering as is prescribed by the HighlightStatus of its base class.

### 46.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines no additional exchanged attribute.

### 46.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attribute.

## 46.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base classes, with identical semantics.

## 46.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

## 46.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

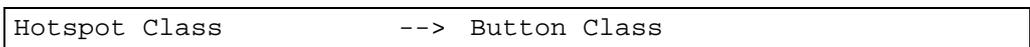
This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class. The following MHEG-5 action semantics have changed from this object's base class:

Select                      Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1)        Apply the *Selection* behaviour as defined in the base class.
- 2)        Apply the *Deselection* behaviour as defined in the base class.

The provisions of use and syntax description of the action are unchanged.

## 46.5 Formal description



## 47 PushButton Class

Description:                Defines labelled, largely rectangular areas on the screen that may interact with the user to produce *IsSelected* events

Base class:                 Button

Subclasses:                SwitchButton

Status:                     Concrete class

### 47.1 Attributes

This subclause defines inherited, exchanged and internal attributes for this class.

#### 47.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with identical semantics, except for the following attribute:

*SelectionStatus*            Rendering of a PushButton object shall depend on the *SelectionStatus* attribute. When the *SelectionStatus* attribute and the EngineResp attribute are both True, the PushButton shall be rendered in a way that signals to the user that selection has taken place. This rendering shall depict a button that has

been pressed. In all other cases, the Button shall be rendered in a way that signals to the user that selection has not taken place. This rendering shall depict a button that has not been pressed.

#### 47.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attributes:

**OriginalLabel** One-line piece of text that represents the initial label of the PushButton.

- Optional OctetString.
- Default value: Empty string.

**CharacterSet** Identification of the character set, or set of character sets, that shall be used by default for rendering of the label. This Integer shall be encoded with a value representing the character set. The application domain shall define a range of CharacterSet and its semantics.

NOTE – The *CharacterSet* attribute provides the initial character set for a label. In addition, the text encoding format may contain escape sequences to switch between character sets.

- Optional Integer.
- Default value: The value of *CharacterSet* attribute from the Application object, if that attribute is specified.

#### 47.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines the following additional internal attribute:

*Label* Label of the PushButton.

- Optional OctetString.
- Initial value: Value of the OriginalLabel attribute.

#### 47.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 47.3 Internal behaviours

This class has all the internal behaviours of its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 47.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with the following changes and extensions:

**Select** Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Apply the *Selection* behaviour as defined in the base class.
- 2) Apply the *Deselection* behaviour as defined in the base class.

The provisions of use and syntax description of the action are unchanged.

SetLabel  
(NewLabel)

Change the label of a PushButton.

Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1) Set *Label* attribute of the target PushButton to *NewLabel*.
- 2) If the target PushButton is active, redraw the PushButton taking into account the new value of *Label* and according to its position in the *DisplayStack* of the active Application object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available PushButton.

Syntax definition:

SetLabel	-->	Target , NewLabel
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
NewLabel	-->	GenericOctetString

GetLabel  
(LabelVar)

Set the Variable referenced by *LabelVar* to the value of the *Label* attribute.

Provision of use:

- *LabelVar* shall refer to an active OctetStringVariable object.

Syntax description:

GetLabel	-->	Target , LabelVar
Target	-->	GenericObjectReference
LabelVar	-->	ObjectReference

## 47.5 Formal description

PushButton Class	-->	Button Class , OriginalLabel? , CharacterSet?
OriginalLabel	-->	OctetString

## 48 SwitchButton Class

Description:	Defines a data structure to deal with labelled, largely rectangular areas on the screen that may interact with the user to produce <i>IsSelected</i> and <i>IsDeselected</i> events
Base class:	PushButton
Subclasses:	None
Status:	Concrete class

### 48.1 Attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with identical semantics, except for the following attribute:

*SelectionStatus* Rendering of a SwitchButton object shall depend on the *SelectionStatus* attribute.

When the *SelectionStatus* attribute and the *EngineResp* are both True, the SwitchButton shall be rendered in a way that signals to the user that selection has taken place. This rendering shall depict a radio button or a checkbox that has been selected, or a push button that has been pressed, depending on the *ButtonStyle* attribute. In all other cases, the Button shall be rendered in a way that signals to the user that selection has not taken place. This rendering shall depict a radio button or a checkbox that has not been selected, or a button that has not been pressed.

#### 48.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has all the attributes of its base classes, with identical semantics.

#### 48.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following additional exchanged attribute:

ButtonStyle Presentation style of the SwitchButton.

- Possible values: *pushbutton* / *radiobutton* / *checkbox*.

#### 48.1.3 Own internal attributes

This class defines no additional internal attributes.

### 48.2 Events

This class has the same events as its base class, with identical semantics.

### 48.3 Internal behaviours

This class has the same internal behaviours as its base class, with identical semantics.

#### 48.4 Effect of MHEG-5 actions

This class has the same set of MHEG-5 actions as its base class, with identical semantics. In addition, the following applicable MHEG-5 actions are defined:

**GetSelectionStatus** (*SelectionStatus-Var*) Return the value of the *SelectionStatus* attribute in the form of a Boolean in the Variable referenced by the *SelectionStatusVar* parameter.

Provisions of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available `SwitchButton` object.
- *SelectionStatusVar* shall refer to an active `BooleanVariable` object.

Syntax description:

<code>GetSelectionStatus</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>Target,</code> <code>SelectionStatusVar</code>
<code>Target</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>GenericObjectReference</code>
<code>SelectionStatusVar</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>ObjectReference</code>

**Select** If the *SelectionStatus* attribute is `True`, disregard this action. Otherwise, invoke the *Selection* behaviour.

**Deselect** If the *SelectionStatus* attribute is `False`, disregard this action. Otherwise, invoke the *Deselection* behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available `SwitchButton` object.

Syntax description:

<code>Deselect</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>Target</code>
<code>Target</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>GenericObjectReference</code>

**Toggle** If the *SelectionStatus* attribute is `False`, invoke the *Selection* behaviour. Otherwise, invoke the *Deselection* behaviour.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available `SwitchButton` object.

Syntax description:

<code>Toggle</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>Target</code>
<code>Target</code>	<code>--&gt;</code>	<code>GenericObjectReference</code>

SetLabel                   Execute the following sequence of actions:

- 1)       Set the *Label* attribute to the new value.
- 2)       If the *Target* SwitchButton is active, redraw the SwitchButton taking into account the new value of *Label* attribute and according to its position on the DisplayStack of the active Application object.

Provision of use:

- The *Target* object shall be an available SwitchButton object.

The syntax of this action is defined in the PushButton class.

## 48.5 Formal description

SwitchButton Class	--> PushButton Class, ButtonStyle
ButtonStyle	--> pushbutton   radiobutton   checkbox

## 49 Action Class

Description:               The Action class is a list of elementary actions that are intended to be executed synchronously.

The Action class does not inherit from any MHEG-5 class; as a result, Action objects cannot be referenced individually.

Base class:               None

Subclasses:               None

Status:                   Concrete class

### 49.1 Attributes

This subclause defines the inherited, exchanged and internal attributes of this class.

#### 49.1.1 Inherited attributes

This class has no inherited attributes.

#### 49.1.2 Own exchanged attributes

This class defines the following exchanged attribute:

ElementaryActions       List of included elementary actions

#### 49.2 Own internal attributes

This class defines no internal attribute.

## 49.3 Formal description

```
Action Class      --> ElementaryAction+
ElementaryAction  --> Activate | Add | AddItem | Append | BringToFront |
                    Call | CallActionSlot | Clear | Clone |
                    CloseConnection | Deactivate | DelItem | Deselect |
                    DeselectItem | Divide | DrawArc | DrawLine | DrawOval |
                    DrawPolygon | DrawPolyline | DrawRectangle |
                    DrawSector | Fork | GetAvailabilityStatus |
                    GetBoxSize | GetCellItem | GetCursorPosition |
                    GetEngineSupport | GetEntryPoint | GetFillColour |
                    GetFirstItem | GetHighlightStatus |
                    GetInteractionStatus | GetItemStatus | GetLabel |
                    GetLastAnchorFired | GetLineColour | GetLineStyle |
                    GetLineWidth | GetListItem | GetListSize |
                    GetOverwriteMode | GetPortion | GetPosition |
                    GetRunningStatus | GetSelectionStatus | GetSliderValue |
                    GetTextContent | GetTextData | GetTokenPosition |
                    GetVolume | Launch | LockScreen | Modulo | Move |
                    MoveTo | Multiply | OpenConnection | Preload |
                    PutBefore | PutBehind | Quit | ReadPersistent | Run |
                    ScaleBitmap | ScaleVideo | ScrollItems | Select |
                    SelectItem | SendEvent | SendToBack | SetBoxSize |
                    SetCachePriority | SetCounterEndPosition |
                    SetCounterPosition | SetCounterTrigger |
                    SetCursorPosition | SetCursorShape | SetData |
                    SetEntryPoint | SetFillColour | SetFirstItem |
                    SetFontRef | SetHighlightStatus | SetInteractionStatus |
                    SetLabel | SetLineColour | SetLineStyle |
                    SetLineWidth | SetOverwriteMode | SetPaletteRef |
                    SetPortion | SetPosition | SetSliderValue | SetSpeed |
                    SetTimer | SetTransparency | SetVariable | SetVolume |
                    Spawn | Step | Stop | StorePersistent | Subtract |
                    TestVariable | Toggle | ToggleItem | TransitionTo |
                    Unload | UnlockScreen
```

NOTE – The semantics and syntax of the elementary actions are provided earlier in this Recommendation.

## 50 Referencing Objects, Content, Values, Colour and XYPosition

### 50.1 ObjectReference

#### Description

This data type is used for referencing objects. The object referenced shall be visible to the object from which the reference is made. This means that the object shall be either an Application or Scene object, or shall be part of either the active Application or the active Scene.

The reference consists of an optional GroupIdentifier and an ObjectNumber. The default value for the GroupIdentifier is the GroupIdentifier of the Scene or Application object from which the reference was made.

```
ObjectReference      --> GroupIdentifier?,
                    ObjectNumber
GroupIdentifier       --> OctetString
ObjectNumber         --> INTEGER
```

## 50.2 ContentReference

Description This data type is used for referencing external sources of data. The ContentReference consists of an OctetString.

ContentReference	--> OctetString
------------------	-----------------

## 50.3 GenericObjectReference

Description Data type that allows either direct reference to an object or indirect reference via a Variable object.

In the case of direct reference, this reference resolves to an ObjectReference directly to the target object.

In the case of indirect reference, this reference resolves to an ObjectReference to an ObjectRefVariable object. That ObjectRefVariable object shall then contain either an ObjectReference to the target object or NULL.

GenericObjectReference	--> DirectReference   IndirectReference
DirectReference	--> ObjectReference
IndirectReference	--> ObjectReference

## 50.4 GenericContentReference

Description Data type that allows either direct reference to an external source of data or indirect reference via a Variable object.

In the case of direct reference, this reference resolves to a ContentReference directly.

In the case of indirect reference, this reference resolves to an ObjectReference to a ContentRefVariable object. That ContentRefVariable object shall then contain either a ContentReference to the content or NULL.

GenericContentReference	--> DirectContentReference   IndirectReference
DirectContentReference	--> ContentReference
IndirectReference	--> ObjectReference

## 50.5 GenericInteger

Description Data type that allows either direct inclusion of an Integer or reference to an IntegerVariable object.

GenericInteger	--> Value   IndirectReference
Value	--> INTEGER
IndirectReference	--> ObjectReference

## 50.6 GenericBoolean

Description Data type that allows either direct inclusion of a Boolean or reference to a BooleanVariable object.

GenericBoolean	--> Value   IndirectReference
Value	--> BOOLEAN
IndirectReference	--> ObjectReference

## 50.7 GenericOctetString

Description Data type that allows either direct inclusion of an OctetString or reference to an OctetStringVariable object.

GenericOctetString	--> Value   IndirectReference
Value	--> OctetString
IndirectReference	--> ObjectReference

## 50.8 Colour

Description Data type used to specify a colour by a name (an OctetString) or by an index (an Integer referencing a palette object).

Colour	--> ColourIndex   AbsoluteColour
ColourIndex	--> INTEGER
AbsoluteColour	--> OctetString

## 50.9 XYPosition

Description Data type used to specify the (X,Y) position in a Scene coordinate system.

XYPosition	--> XPosition, Yposition
Xposition	--> INTEGER
Yposition	--> INTEGER

## 50.10 Resolution of generic values

Generic values (GenericContentReference, GenericObjectReference, GenericInteger, GenericBoolean, and GenericOctetString) are used only as parameters to elementary actions. The resolution takes place when the action is invoked. As an example, consider an IntegerVariable, V, that is initially set to 10. If the following actions are invoked:

- 1) set V to 15;
- 2) set a Slider's *Value* to V;
- 3) set V to 20,

the Slider's *Value* will be set to 15. In other words, the Slider's value is set by value, not by reference.

## 51 Referencing MHEG-5 Objects

References to MHEG-5 objects are represented by ObjectReferences. At any time, an ObjectReference shall be resolved by taking into account both the MHEG-5 Group object that contains this reference (a Scene or an Application) and the content of the GroupIdentifier and ObjectNumber attributes of the ObjectReference.

The following presents how the ObjectReference shall be encoded according to the Group of origin and the nature of the referenced MHEG-5 object:

- i) Within a Scene object
  - a) Reference to an Ingredient of the active Scene:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier may or may not be encoded.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall contain the object number of the Ingredient within the Scene.
  - b) Reference to a shared Ingredient of the active Application:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the active Application object.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall contain the object number of the Ingredient within the Application object.
  - c) Reference to the active Scene itself:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier need not be encoded.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
  - d) Reference to another Scene:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the Referenced Scene object.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
  - e) Reference to the active Application:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the active Application object.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
  - f) Reference to another Application object:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the referenced Application object.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
- ii) Within an Application object
  - a) Reference to an Ingredient of the Application group:
    - 1) The GroupIdentifier may or may not be encoded.
    - 2) The ObjectNumber shall contain the unique object number of the Ingredient within the Application.

- b) Reference to a Scene:
  - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the referenced Scene object.
  - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
- c) Reference to the Application itself:
  - 1) The GroupIdentifier need not be encoded.
  - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.
- d) Reference to another Application object:
  - 1) The GroupIdentifier shall contain the group identifier of the referenced Application object.
  - 2) The ObjectNumber shall be set to 0.

This Recommendation does not define the actual encoding of the GroupIdentifier OctetString. Every MHEG-5 application domain shall define specific forms of the GroupIdentifier.

## 52 Name Spaces, RemoteProgram Calls and Connections

The MHEG-5 engine has a default name space, which is the name space of the active Application object. All other Application objects that can be reached from it (by Launch or Spawn) shall also be in that name space. This name space, in a wide sense, also should include enough information to perform remote calls to named methods through the MHEG-5 Program objects.

NOTE – In Appendix I, an explanation may be found on how the MHEG-5 engine attaches to this name space.

However, it is also possible for an MHEG-5 application to connect to another name space temporarily, using the OpenConnection action. That new name space may be used for named method calls (through the MHEG-5 Program objects) and in order to access an MHEG-5 Scene object that is located in a name space other than that of its Application object. The following rules apply to the references to and from such a Scene object:

- 1) The reference to a Scene object in a name space other than that of the Application object shall be encoded within a TransitionTo action of which the ConnectionTag parameter indicates the connection with the entity that administers that other name space.
- 2) All ContentReferences from that Scene object shall be interpreted in the «other» name space.
- 3) All GroupIdentifier references from that Scene object shall be interpreted in the default name space, except as indicated by rule 1) above.

Reminder: Whether or not the MHEG-5 engine shall implement the OpenConnection and CloseConnection actions is a decision of the application domain.

## 53 Event handling

### 53.1 Types of events

This Recommendation defines the following events: *IsAvailable*, *ContentAvailable*, *IsDeleted*, *IsRunning*, *IsStopped*, *TestEvent*, *UserInput*, *TimerFired*, *AsynchStopped*, *InteractionCompleted*, *TokenMovedFrom*, *TokenMovedTo*, *FirstItemPresented*, *LastItemPresented*, *HeadItems*, *TailItems*, *ItemSelected*, *ItemDeselected*, *StreamEvent*, *StreamPlaying*, *StreamStopped*, *CounterTrigger*, *HighlightOn*, *HighlightOff*, *CursorEnter*, *CursorLeave*, *AnchorFired*, *IsSelected*, *IsDeselected*, *EntryFieldFull*, *EngineEvent*.

An event always emanates from one specific object, called the event source. The semantics of each MHEG-5 class define the circumstances under which an object of that class generates a specific event.

Some of the event types above have associated with them a data value. That value is used in order to determine whether the associated Link should fire, as described below. The following table lists the data value associated with each event type:

Event Type	Associated data	Associated value type
AnchorFired	AnchorTag	OctetString
CounterTrigger	Identifier	INTEGER
EngineEvent	EventTag	INTEGER
FirstItemPresented	Index	BOOLEAN
HeadItems	Number of items	INTEGER
ItemDeselected	Index	INTEGER
ItemSelected	Index	INTEGER
LastItemPresented	Index	BOOLEAN
StreamEvent	StreamEventTag	OctetString
TailItems	Number of items	INTEGER
TestEvent	TestResult	BOOLEAN
TimerFired	TimerIdentifier	INTEGER
TokenMovedFrom	Index	INTEGER
TokenMovedTo	Index	INTEGER
UserInput	UserInputEventTag	INTEGER
All others	None	N/A

Events which types have associated data must always be generated with that data. E.g. when a *TimerFired* event is generated, it must be accompanied by the *TimerIdentifier*.

### 53.2 Synchronous events and asynchronous events

Events may occur for two reasons.

- 1) A process that is asynchronous to the MHEG-5 engine produces an event.  
The resulting event is then called asynchronous. Asynchronous events are all events of the types *AnchorFired*, *AsynchStopped*, *ContentAvailable*, *CounterTrigger*, *CursorEnter*, *CursorLeave*, *EngineEvent*, *EntryFieldFull*, *InteractionCompleted*, *StreamEvent*, *StreamPlaying*, *StreamStopped*, *TimerFired* and *UserInput*.
- 2) The event is the direct result of the execution of an elementary action.  
The resulting event is then called synchronous. Synchronous events are all events of the types *FirstItemPresented*, *HeadItems*, *HighlightOff*, *HighlightOn*, *IsAvailable*, *IsDeleted*, *IsDeselected*, *IsRunning*, *IsSelected*, *IsStopped*, *ItemDeselected*, *ItemSelected*, *LastItemPresented*, *TailItems*, *TestEvent*, *TokenMovedFrom* and *TokenMovedTo*. The semantics of the classes of this Recommendation explicitly state when such an event is generated.

### 53.3 Event handling and Links

Every MHEG-5 Link has a LinkCondition and a LinkEffect. When the MHEG-5 engine examines an event that has occurred, it shall check all active Links (of the active Application and Scene objects) to see if their EventType and EventSource attributes match the type and source of the event in question. For each of the Links that fulfil this condition, the associated data of the event is checked against the optional EventData attribute of the Link. Links that fulfil this condition as well (or that fulfil it by default since they have no EventData) are said to be *fired*.

The MHEG-5 engine is driven by the occurrence of asynchronous events. At the occurrence of an asynchronous event, the MHEG-5 engine shall examine all active Links of the active Application and Scene objects to determine if they have fired. For each of the fired Links, the elementary actions of its LinkEffect shall be stored in a queue for sequential execution. This Recommendation does *not* specify the order in which two Links that fire on the same event are to be handled.

Default error handling is the following: if one of the aforementioned elementary action produces an error, that elementary action shall be ignored. It is however allowed for an application domain to use EngineEvent events to indicate the error situation to the MHEG-5 application (e.g. to send an error message).

As a direct result of a LinkEffect being executed, synchronous events may occur. These events shall be dealt with directly by the MHEG-5 engine. In other words, after the execution of each elementary action, the MHEG-5 engine shall check if any additional Links have fired as the result of a synchronous events occurring. If this is the case, that Link and all its effects shall be completely processed before the MHEG-5 engine continues to process the next elementary action of the original Link.

Any asynchronous events (such as a UserInput event) that occur while the original asynchronous events are being processed are not dealt with until after the completion of the entire process above. The asynchronous events which are not handled are queued.

Actions that change the context of the current action processing will influence both the queue of asynchronous events and the queue of actions waiting for processing. The context is changed by "TransitionTo", "Launch", "Spawn" and "Quit" actions. If such an action occurs, the pending asynchronous events whose origin is after the context switch shall be removed from the asynchronous event queue. Elementary actions waiting for execution shall be removed from the action queue as well.

In this context, it should be noted that some MHEG-5 actions, such as Run, have an effect that continues after the completion of the action itself. For example, when a Bitmap object is run, the Run action returns as soon as the Bitmap has been displayed, thus allowing the Link processor to continue its work. The effect of the action (i.e. that the bitmap is on the screen) still continues after the completion of the action.

Another important aspect is that it is possible for a Link to deactivate itself in its LinkEffect. Such an action shall be postponed until the LinkEffect has been completely executed.

### 53.4 User input

This Recommendation specifies neither the user input devices nor the types of events that are generated. The «raw» user input received by the MHEG-5 engine (for instance in the form of remote control commands) shall be translated by the engine, where appropriate, into occurrences of *UserInput* events. These events all have a tag, which specifies which *UserInput* event has occurred. The tag is an Integer; the semantics of the tag are defined by an InputEventRegister attached to the Scene object.

Once the MHEG-5 engine has translated the raw user input into one or more *UserInput* events, such events are treated as asynchronous events by the engine as described above.

### **53.5 User interaction**

MHEG-5 objects that belong to the Interactable class may be in a certain state, called «interacting», which is signalled by the *InteractionStatus* attribute of the object being True. When an object is in this state, no *UserInput* events shall be generated by the MHEG-5 engine. The reason for this rule is that the MHEG-5 engine might need to use the «raw» user input in order to interact with the Interactable, and therefore may not be able to generate the normal *UserInput* events.

At all times, at most, one object shall be interacting.

However, all other events are still generated. This makes it possible, for instance, to implement time-outs.

### **53.6 Cursor events**

*CursorLeave* and *CursorEnter* events defined earlier need the following precision. It may occur that a cursor moves from one area defined by an active Interactable immediately to another area defined by another active Interactable; that may be the case, for instance, when one area is on top of the other, that is when one area is above the other in the *DisplayStack* and they overlap. In such case, a *CursorLeave* event shall be generated by the former Interactable (the topmost of the two in the *DisplayStack*), followed by a *CursorEnter* event generated by the latter Interactable (the lower one in the *DisplayStack*).

Cursor events have also to be generated if an active Interactable is moved beneath the cursor position, or if an Interactable beneath the cursor position becomes active, or if the stacking order of Interactibles beneath the cursor position changes in such a way that the topmost Interactable beneath the cursor position is changed.

In general, only one active Interactable per time can have the cursor in its bounding box. This has to be reflected by appropriate sequences of *CursorLeave* and *CursorEnter* events.

Finally, it should also be recalled here that an inactive Interactable shall not generate any cursor events.

### **53.7 Error handling**

In general, default error mechanism of the MHEG-5 engine consists in ignoring the cause of the error and continuing to the next step. For instance, if an interchanged object is an instance of a class that the MHEG-5 engine does not recognize, the object shall be ignored. Any subsequent action that may occur in relation with this object and that produces an error shall be ignored. More generally, any cause of error (e.g. in an elementary action) shall result in ignoring that cause (e.g. the elementary action).

However, as mentioned earlier, it is allowed for an application domain to use *EngineEvent* events to indicate the error situation to the MHEG-5 application (e.g. to send to an error message).

## **54 Rendering Visibles**

### **54.1 Coordinate system**

This subclause describes the semantics associated with displaying objects of classes that inherit from the *Visible* class. The MHEG-5 engine shall have access to exactly one display, which is called the

«screen» in the rest of this subclause. The screen is an orthogonal coordinate system, with an x axis from left to right and a y axis from top to bottom. The origin is in the top left corner. Depending on the SceneCoordinateSystem and AspectRatio attributes of the currently active Scene object, the coordinate system may have different sizes and aspect ratios.

## 54.2 Bounding box

Each Visible has a bounding box, specified by the internal attributes Position and BoxSize. These are both expressed in the Scene coordinate space. The contents of the Visible shall be anchored to the top left corner of the bounding box. Furthermore, the contents of the Visible shall be clipped so that no parts that fall outside the bounding box are rendered. The clipping shall be performed in the following fashion:

- a) For Text and its subclasses, the clipping is performed in such a way that the positioning of the text within the bounding box is respected. Here, only the case where LineOrientation is *horizontal* is explained; the *vertical* case is obtained analogously.
  - Horizontal justification:

If the Text object has a TextWrapping attribute set to True, its content is split into as many lines as are needed in order to fit into the bounding box. In addition, if the HorizontalJustification attribute of the Text object is set to *justified*, the lines are displayed so that their beginning is aligned with the left edge of the bounding box and that their end is aligned with the right edge of the bounding box.

If the TextWrapping attribute is set to False, the following rules apply for horizontal justification:

    - If HorizontalJustification is set to *start*, the lines are clipped so that the beginning of each line is aligned with the left edge of the bounding box.
    - If HorizontalJustification is set to *end*, the lines are clipped so that the end of each line is aligned with the right edge of the bounding box.
    - If HorizontalJustification is set to *centre*, the lines are clipped on both sides, so that the centre of each line is aligned with a virtual vertical line at the centre of the bounding box.
  - Vertical Justification:

For a Text that has the VerticalJustification attribute set to *end*, its content is clipped so that the end of the text is aligned with the bottom of the bounding box; thus, the beginning of the text is obscured. Conversely, if VerticalJustification is set to *start*, the text is clipped so that its end is obscured. Finally, if VerticalJustification is set to *centre*, the text is clipped so that the centre of the text is aligned with the centre of the bounding box, meaning that both beginning and end are obscured.
  - Background Colour:

If the text object has a background colour other than transparent, its entire bounding box shall be filled with that colour, whether or not the text fills the bounding box.
- b) For Slider, Rectangle, and subclasses of Button, the object is not clipped but rather scaled to fit exactly within its bounding box.
- c) Other Visible objects are clipped so that their top left corner is positioned at the top left corner of the bounding box. For these Visible objects, some part of the bounding box may be empty; that part shall then be transparent.

### 54.3 Display stack

The MHEG-5 engine shall implement a display stack. Each Visible is initially rendered according to its position in the *DisplayStack* attribute of the current Application object. Visible's may be moved up and down in the display stack using the actions BringToFront, SendToBack, PutBefore and PutBehind. When a Visible is moved in this way, (parts of) other Visible's may be obscured or uncovered. The display shall then be updated accordingly.

### 54.4 Transparent objects

Transparency of objects are specified with an Integer in the range [0, 100] (percent). Interpreting the integer between 1 and 99 depends on the implementation, and this Recommendation does not define it. Neither the actual rendering and display accuracy, nor the algorithms used to perform these tasks are specified by this Recommendation. However, transparency values of 0% and 100% are specified; they are defined as follows.

Objects of 0% transparency shall be rendered as non-transparent objects, i.e. the original colours shall be rendered without any modification. Objects of 100% transparency shall be rendered as completely transparent objects, i.e. the original colours shall not be rendered, and the background shall be perceived.

- i) For each location in the Scene coordinate space, at most the  $N$  objects whose bounding boxes contain that location are considered. These objects are ordered in the so-called display stack. Let's call the objects  $O_1, O_2, \dots, O_N$ , where  $O_N$  denotes the topmost object.
- ii) The computation of the final pixel value is done from the bottom of the stack. The pixel value after taking into account  $j$  objects is called  $V_j$ . The final pixel value, therefore, is called  $V_N$ .
- iii) The computation of the pixel value starts from a completely black background. Therefore,  $V_0 = \langle \text{black} \rangle$ .
- iv) For a  $j$  taking successively the values 1 through  $N$ , the following is performed:
  - a) If the pixel value of  $O_j$  to be considered is called  $P_j$  and is  $p$  percent translucent:

$$V_j = V_{j-1} \frac{P}{100} + P_j \left( 1 - \frac{P}{100} \right).$$

This formula may be applied to all colour components of a pixel if the colour space is not based on the luminance and colour difference signals (RGB is such a case). However, this formula must be applied only to the luminance of a pixel if the colour space is based on the luminance and colour difference signals such as YUV. In addition, the values in this formula are all assumed to be expressed in one and the same linear colour space. If a non-linear colour space is used, this formula may be taken into account for the precise rendering.

- b) Specifically, if the pixel is completely transparent (invisible):

$$V_j = V_{j-1}.$$

- c) Specifically, if the pixel is completely opaque:

$$V_j = P_j.$$

This model shall not be understood to mandate any specific rendering and/or display process in a specific implementation of an MHEG-5 engine. Its sole purpose is to define unambiguously what the semantics are of combining different transparent graphics objects. Neither the actual rendering and display accuracy, nor the algorithms used to perform these tasks are defined by this Recommendation.

## 54.5 Pixel aspect ratio

Generally, the pixel aspect ratio of a Scene and its content are assumed to be the same; a pixel of the Scene's content is then exactly mapped to a pixel of the Scene – no scaling is needed. If however the two aspect ratios are different, the MHEG-5 engine may scale the content – taking into account the two aspect ratios – in order to compensate for the presentation of the content. Note that this scaling is up to the implementation of the MHEG-5 engine and is an optional feature; this Recommendation does not define any specific way to do it.

### ANNEX A

#### ASN.1 notation

This annex describes the ASN.1 notation for the syntax of MHEG-5 objects conforming to ISO/IEC 13522-5.

The encoding of the MHEG-5 objects from this ASN.1 syntax shall make use of the *Distinguished Encoding Rules (DER)* defined in ITU-T Rec. X.690 | ISO/IEC 8825-1. The alternative encoding is the textual notation defined in Annex B.

The syntax that shall be used in the DER is detailed below.

```
-- $PREFIX=ISOMHEG-mheg-5:mheg-5
-- Module: mheg-5
```

```
ISO13522-MHEG-5 {joint-iso-itu-t(2) mheg(19) version(1) mheg-5(17)}
```

```
DEFINITIONS IMPLICIT TAGS ::=
BEGIN
```

```
-- This module defines the MHEG-5 abstract syntax which consists of data values of type:
-- ISO13522-MHEG-5.InterchangedObject.
-- This abstract syntax is identified by the name: {joint-iso-itu-t(2) mheg(19) version(1) mheg-5(17)}.
```

```
InterchangedObject ::= CHOICE
{
  application [0] ApplicationClass,
  scene [1] SceneClass
}
```

```
-- A.1 Root Class _____
```

```
RootClass ::= ObjectReference
```

```
-- A.2 Group Class _____
```

```
GroupClass ::= SET
{
  RootClass (WITH COMPONENTS
    {external-reference (WITH COMPONENTS {..., object-number (0)}) PRESENT,
    internal-reference ABSENT}),
  standard-identifier [2] StandardIdentifier OPTIONAL,
  standard-version [3] INTEGER (1) OPTIONAL,
  object-information [4] OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,
  on-start-up [5] ActionClass OPTIONAL,
  on-close-down [6] ActionClass OPTIONAL,
```

```
original-group-cache-priority [7] INTEGER (0..255) DEFAULT 127,  
items [8] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF GroupItem OPTIONAL  
}
```

```
StandardIdentifier ::= SEQUENCE  
{  
  joint-iso-itu-t INTEGER (2),  
  mheg INTEGER (19)  
}
```

```
GroupItem ::= CHOICE  
{  
  resident-program [9] ResidentProgramClass,  
  remote-program [10] RemoteProgramClass,  
  interchanged-program [11] InterchangedProgramClass,  
  palette [12] PaletteClass,  
  font [13] FontClass,  
  cursor-shape [14] CursorShapeClass,  
  boolean-variable [15] BooleanVariableClass,  
  integer-variable [16] IntegerVariableClass,  
  octet-string-variable [17] OctetStringVariableClass,  
  object-ref-variable [18] ObjectRefVariableClass,  
  content-ref-variable [19] ContentRefVariableClass,  
  link [20] LinkClass,  
  stream [21] StreamClass,  
  bitmap [22] BitmapClass,  
  line-art [23] LineArtClass,  
  dynamic-line-art [24] DynamicLineArtClass,  
  rectangle [25] RectangleClass,  
  hotspot [26] HotspotClass,  
  switch-button [27] SwitchButtonClass,  
  push-button [28] PushButtonClass,  
  text [29] TextClass,  
  entry-field [30] EntryFieldClass,  
  hyper-text [31] HyperTextClass,  
  slider [32] SliderClass,  
  token-group [33] TokenGroupClass,  
  list-group [34] ListGroupClass  
}
```

-- A.3 Application Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
ApplicationClass ::= SET  
{  
  COMPONENTS OF GroupClass,  
  on-spawn-close-down [35] ActionClass OPTIONAL,  
  on-restart [36] ActionClass OPTIONAL,  
  default-attributes [37] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF DefaultAttribute OPTIONAL  
}
```

```
DefaultAttribute ::= CHOICE  
{  
  character-set [38] INTEGER,  
  background-colour [39] Colour,  
  text-content-hook [40] INTEGER,  
  text-colour [41] Colour,  
  font [42] FontBody,  
  font-attributes [43] OCTET STRING,  
  interchanged-program-content-hook [44] INTEGER,  
  stream-content-hook [45] INTEGER,  
  bitmap-content-hook [46] INTEGER,
```

```
line-art-content-hook [47] INTEGER,  
button-ref-colour [48] Colour,  
highlight-ref-colour [49] Colour,  
slider-ref-colour [50] Colour  
}
```

```
FontBody ::= CHOICE  
{  
  direct-font OCTET STRING,  
  indirect-font ObjectReference  
}
```

-- A.4 Scene Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
SceneClass ::= SET  
{  
  COMPONENTS OF GroupClass,  
  input-event-register [51] INTEGER,  
  scene-coordinate-system [52] SceneCoordinateSystem,  
  aspect-ratio [53] AspectRatio DEFAULT {width 4, height 3},  
  moving-cursor [54] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,  
  next-scenes [55] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF NextScene OPTIONAL  
}
```

```
SceneCoordinateSystem ::= SEQUENCE  
{  
  x-scene INTEGER,  
  y-scene INTEGER  
}
```

```
AspectRatio ::= SEQUENCE  
{  
  width INTEGER,  
  height INTEGER  
}
```

```
NextScene ::= SEQUENCE  
{  
  scene-ref OCTET STRING,  
  scene-weight INTEGER (0..255)  
}
```

-- A.5 Ingredient Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
IngredientClass ::= SET  
{  
  RootClass (WITH COMPONENTS  
    {..., external-reference (WITH COMPONENTS {..., object-number (1..MAX)})),  
  initially-active [56] BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,  
  content-hook [57] INTEGER OPTIONAL,  
  original-content [58] ContentBody OPTIONAL,  
  shared [59] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE  
}
```

```
ContentBody ::= CHOICE  
{  
  included-content OCTET STRING,  
  referenced-content ReferencedContent  
}
```

```
ReferencedContent ::= SEQUENCE
{
  content-reference ContentReference,
  content-size [60] INTEGER OPTIONAL,
  content-cache-priority [61] INTEGER (0..255) DEFAULT 127
}
```

-- A.6 Link Class

---

```
LinkClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF IngredientClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT}),
  link-condition [62] LinkCondition,
  link-effect [63] ActionClass
}
```

```
LinkCondition ::= SEQUENCE
{
  event-source ObjectReference,
  event-type EventType,
  event-data EventData OPTIONAL
}
```

```
EventType ::= ENUMERATED
{
  is-available(1),
  content-available(2),
  is-deleted(3),
  is-running(4),
  is-stopped(5),
  user-input(6),
  anchor-fired(7),
  timer-fired(8),
  asynch-stopped(9),
  interaction-completed(10),
  token-moved-from(11),
  token-moved-to(12),
  stream-event(13),
  stream-playing(14),
  stream-stopped(15),
  counter-trigger(16),
  highlight-on(17),
  highlight-off(18),
  cursor-enter(19),
  cursor-leave(20),
  is-selected(21),
  is-deselected(22),
  test-event(23),
  first-item-presented(24),
  last-item-presented(25),
  head-items(26),
  tail-items(27),
  item-selected(28),
  item-deselected(29),
  entry-field-full(30),
  engine-event(31)
}
```

**EventData ::= CHOICE**

```
{  
  octetstring OCTET STRING,  
  boolean BOOLEAN,  
  integer INTEGER  
}
```

-- A.7 Program Class \_\_\_\_\_

**ProgramClass ::= SET**

```
{  
  COMPONENTS OF IngredientClass  
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., initially-active (FALSE) PRESENT}),  
  name [64] OCTET STRING,  
  initially-available [65] BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE  
}
```

-- A.8 Resident Program Class \_\_\_\_\_

**ResidentProgramClass ::= ProgramClass**

(WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT})

-- A.9 Remote Program Class \_\_\_\_\_

**RemoteProgramClass ::= SET**

```
{  
  COMPONENTS OF ProgramClass  
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT}),  
  program-connection-tag [66] INTEGER OPTIONAL  
}
```

-- A.10 Interchanged Program Class \_\_\_\_\_

**InterchangedProgramClass ::= ProgramClass**

(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-content PRESENT})

-- A.11 Palette Class \_\_\_\_\_

**PaletteClass ::= IngredientClass**

(WITH COMPONENTS  
 {..., content-hook PRESENT, original-content PRESENT, initially-active (TRUE)})

-- A.12 Font Class \_\_\_\_\_

**FontClass ::= IngredientClass**

(WITH COMPONENTS  
 {..., content-hook PRESENT, original-content PRESENT, initially-active (TRUE)})

-- A.13 Cursor Shape \_\_\_\_\_

**CursorShapeClass ::= IngredientClass**

(WITH COMPONENTS  
 {..., content-hook PRESENT, original-content PRESENT, initially-active (TRUE)})

-- A.14 Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

**VariableClass ::= SET**

```
{  
  COMPONENTS OF IngredientClass
```

```
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT, initially-active (TRUE)),
original-value [67] OriginalValue
}
```

```
OriginalValue ::= CHOICE
{
  boolean BOOLEAN,
  integer INTEGER,
  octetstring OCTET STRING,
  object-reference [68] ObjectReference,
  content-reference [69] ContentReference
}
```

-- A.15 Boolean Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
BooleanVariableClass ::= VariableClass
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-value (WITH COMPONENTS {..., boolean PRESENT}))
```

-- A.16 Integer Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
IntegerVariableClass ::= VariableClass
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-value (WITH COMPONENTS {..., integer PRESENT}))
```

-- A.17 Octet String Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
OctetStringVariableClass ::= VariableClass
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-value (WITH COMPONENTS {..., octetstring PRESENT}))
```

-- A.18 Object Reference Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
ObjectRefVariableClass ::= VariableClass
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-value (WITH COMPONENTS {..., object-reference PRESENT}))
```

-- A.19 Content Reference Variable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
ContentRefVariableClass ::= VariableClass
(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-value (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-reference PRESENT}))
```

-- A.20 Presentable Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
PresentableClass ::= IngredientClass
```

-- A.21 Token Manager Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
TokenManagerClass ::= SET
{
  movement-table [70] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Movement OPTIONAL
}
```

```
Movement ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF INTEGER
```

-- A.22 Token Group Class \_\_\_\_\_

```
TokenGroupClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF PresentableClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT}),
  COMPONENTS OF TokenManagerClass,
  token-group-items [71] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF TokenGroupItem,
  no-token-action-slots [72] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF ActionSlot OPTIONAL
}
```

```

TokenGroupItem ::= SEQUENCE
{
  a-visible ObjectReference,
  action-slots SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF ActionSlot OPTIONAL
}

```

```

ActionSlot ::= CHOICE
{
  action-class ActionClass,
  null NULL
}

```

-- A.23 List Group Class \_\_\_\_\_

```

ListGroupClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF TokenGroupClass,
  positions [73] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF XYPosition,
  wrap-around [74] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  multiple-selection [75] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE
}

```

-- A.24 Visible Class \_\_\_\_\_

```

VisibleClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF PresentableClass,
  original-box-size [76] OriginalBoxSize,
  original-position [77] XYPosition DEFAULT {x-position 0, y-position 0},
  original-palette-ref [78] ObjectReference OPTIONAL
}

```

```

OriginalBoxSize ::= SEQUENCE
{
  x-length INTEGER (0..MAX),
  y-length INTEGER (0..MAX)
}

```

-- A.25 Bitmap Class \_\_\_\_\_

```

BitmapClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-content PRESENT}),
  tiling [79] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,
  original-transparency [80] INTEGER (0..100) DEFAULT 0
}

```

-- A.26 Line Art Class \_\_\_\_\_

```

LineArtClass ::= SET
{
  COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-content PRESENT}),
  bordered-bounding-box [81] BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  original-line-width [82] INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
  original-line-style [83] INTEGER {solid(1), dashed(2), dotted(3)} DEFAULT solid,
  original-ref-line-colour [84] Colour OPTIONAL,
  original-ref-fill-colour [85] Colour OPTIONAL
}

```

-- A.27 Rectangle Class \_\_\_\_\_

**RectangleClass ::= LineArtClass**  
**(WITH COMPONENTS**  
**{..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT, bordered-bounding-box ABSENT})**

-- A.28 Dynamic Line Art Class \_\_\_\_\_

**DynamicLineArtClass ::= LineArtClass**  
**(WITH COMPONENTS**  
**{..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT})**

-- A.29 Text Class \_\_\_\_\_

**TextClass ::= SET**  
**{**  
**COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass**  
**(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-content PRESENT}),**  
**original-font [86] FontBody OPTIONAL,**  
**font-attributes [43] OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,**  
**text-colour [41] Colour OPTIONAL,**  
**background-colour [39] Colour OPTIONAL,**  
**character-set [38] INTEGER OPTIONAL,**  
**horizontal-justification [87] Justification DEFAULT start,**  
**vertical-justification [88] Justification DEFAULT start,**  
**line-orientation [89] LineOrientation DEFAULT horizontal,**  
**start-corner [90] StartCorner DEFAULT upper-left,**  
**text-wrapping [91] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE**  
**}**

**Justification ::= ENUMERATED**  
**{**  
**start(1),**  
**end(2),**  
**centre(3),**  
**justified(4)**  
**}**

**LineOrientation ::= ENUMERATED {vertical(1), horizontal(2)}**

**StartCorner ::= ENUMERATED**  
**{**  
**upper-left(1),**  
**upper-right(2),**  
**lower-left(3),**  
**lower-right(4)**  
**}**

-- A.30 Stream Class \_\_\_\_\_

**StreamClass ::= SET**  
**{**  
**COMPONENTS OF PresentableClass**  
**(WITH COMPONENTS {..., original-content PRESENT}),**  
**multiplex [92] SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF StreamComponent,**  
**storage [93] Storage DEFAULT stream,**  
**looping [94] INTEGER {infinity(0)} DEFAULT 1**  
**}**

**StreamComponent ::= CHOICE**

```
{
  audio [95] AudioClass,
  video [96] VideoClass,
  rtgraphics [97] RTGraphicsClass
}
```

**Storage ::= ENUMERATED {memory(1), stream(2)}**

-- A.31 Audio Class \_\_\_\_\_

**AudioClass ::= SET**

```
{
  COMPONENTS OF PresentableClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT, shared ABSENT}),
  component-tag [98] INTEGER,
  original-volume [99] INTEGER DEFAULT 0
}
```

-- A.32 Video Class \_\_\_\_\_

**VideoClass ::= SET**

```
{
  COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT, shared ABSENT, original-
  palette-ref ABSENT}),
  component-tag [98] INTEGER,
  termination [100] Termination DEFAULT disappear
}
```

**Termination ::= ENUMERATED {freeze(1), disappear(2)}**

-- A.33 RTGraphics Class \_\_\_\_\_

**RTGraphicsClass ::= SET**

```
{
  COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT, shared ABSENT}),
  component-tag [98] INTEGER,
  termination [100] Termination DEFAULT disappear
}
```

-- A.34 Interactable Class \_\_\_\_\_

**InteractableClass ::= SET**

```
{
  engine-resp [101] BOOLEAN DEFAULT TRUE,
  highlight-ref-colour [49] Colour OPTIONAL
}
```

-- A.35 Slider Class \_\_\_\_\_

**SliderClass ::= SET**

```
{
  COMPONENTS OF VisibleClass
  (WITH COMPONENTS {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT}),
  COMPONENTS OF InteractableClass,
  orientation [102] Orientation,
  max-value [103] INTEGER,
  min-value [104] INTEGER DEFAULT 1,
  initial-value [105] INTEGER OPTIONAL,
}
```

**initial-portion** [106] INTEGER OPTIONAL,  
**step-size** [107] INTEGER DEFAULT 1,  
**slider-style** [108] SliderStyle DEFAULT normal,  
**slider-ref-colour** [50] Colour OPTIONAL  
}

**Orientation** ::= ENUMERATED {left(1), right(2), up(3), down(4)}

**SliderStyle** ::= ENUMERATED {normal(1), thermometer(2), proportional(3)}

-- A.36 Entry Field Class \_\_\_\_\_

**EntryFieldClass** ::= SET  
{  
  **COMPONENTS OF** TextClass,  
  **COMPONENTS OF** InteractableClass,  
  **input-type** [109] InputType DEFAULT any,  
  **char-list** [110] OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,  
  **obscured-input** [111] BOOLEAN DEFAULT FALSE,  
  **max-length** [112] INTEGER DEFAULT 0  
}

**InputType** ::= ENUMERATED {alpha(1), numeric(2), any(3), listed(4)}

-- A.37 Hyper Text Class \_\_\_\_\_

**HyperTextClass** ::= SET  
{  
  **COMPONENTS OF** TextClass,  
  **COMPONENTS OF** InteractableClass  
}

-- A.38 Button Class \_\_\_\_\_

**ButtonClass** ::= SET  
{  
  **COMPONENTS OF** VisibleClass  
  (WITH **COMPONENTS** {..., content-hook ABSENT, original-content ABSENT}),  
  **COMPONENTS OF** InteractableClass,  
  **button-ref-colour** [48] Colour OPTIONAL  
}

-- A.39 Hotspot Class \_\_\_\_\_

**HotspotClass** ::= ButtonClass

-- A.40 Push Button Class \_\_\_\_\_

**PushButtonClass** ::= SET  
{  
  **COMPONENTS OF** ButtonClass,  
  **original-label** [113] OCTET STRING OPTIONAL,  
  **character-set** [38] INTEGER OPTIONAL  
}

-- A.41 Switch Button Class \_\_\_\_\_

**SwitchButtonClass** ::= SET  
{

```
COMPONENTS OF PushButtonClass,  
button-style [114] ButtonStyle  
}
```

```
ButtonStyle ::= ENUMERATED  
{  
  pushbutton(1),  
  radiobutton(2),  
  checkbox(3)  
}
```

-- A.42 Action Class

---

```
ActionClass ::= SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF ElementaryAction
```

```
ElementaryAction ::= CHOICE  
{  
  activate [115] GenericObjectReference,  
  add [116] Add,  
  add-item [117] AddItem,  
  append [118] Append,  
  bring-to-front [119] GenericObjectReference,  
  call [120] Call,  
  call-action-slot [121] CallActionSlot,  
  clear [122] GenericObjectReference,  
  clone [123] Clone,  
  close-connection [124] CloseConnection,  
  deactivate [125] GenericObjectReference,  
  del-item [126] DelItem,  
  deselect [127] GenericObjectReference,  
  deselect-item [128] DeselectItem,  
  divide [129] Divide,  
  draw-arc [130] DrawArc,  
  draw-line [131] DrawLine,  
  draw-oval [132] DrawOval,  
  draw-polygon [133] DrawPolygon,  
  draw-polyline [134] DrawPolyline,  
  draw-rectangle [135] DrawRectangle,  
  draw-sector [136] DrawSector,  
  fork [137] Fork,  
  get-availability-status [138] GetAvailabilityStatus,  
  get-box-size [139] GetBoxSize,  
  get-cell-item [140] GetCellItem,  
  get-cursor-position [141] GetCursorPosition,  
  get-engine-support [142] GetEngineSupport,  
  get-entry-point [143] GetEntryPoint,  
  get-fill-colour [144] GetFillColour,  
  get-first-item [145] GetFirstItem,  
  get-highlight-status [146] GetHighlightStatus,  
  get-interaction-status [147] GetInteractionStatus,  
  get-item-status [148] GetItemStatus,  
  get-label [149] GetLabel,  
  get-last-anchor-fired [150] GetLastAnchorFired,  
  get-line-colour [151] GetLineColour,  
  get-line-style [152] GetLineStyle,  
  get-line-width [153] GetLineWidth,  
  get-list-item [154] GetListItem,  
  get-list-size [155] GetListSize,  
  get-overwrite-mode [156] GetOverwriteMode,  
  get-portion [157] GetPortion,  
  get-position [158] GetPosition,
```

get-running-status [159] GetRunningStatus,  
get-selection-status [160] GetSelectionStatus,  
get-slider-value [161] GetSliderValue,  
get-text-content [162] GetTextContent,  
get-text-data [163] GetTextData,  
get-token-position [164] GetTokenPosition,  
get-volume [165] GetVolume,  
launch [166] GenericObjectReference,  
lock-screen [167] GenericObjectReference,  
modulo [168] Modulo,  
move [169] Move,  
move-to [170] MoveTo,  
multiply [171] Multiply,  
open-connection [172] OpenConnection,  
preload [173] GenericObjectReference,  
put-before [174] PutBefore,  
put-behind [175] PutBehind,  
quit [176] GenericObjectReference,  
read-persistent [177] ReadPersistent,  
run [178] GenericObjectReference,  
scale-bitmap [179] ScaleBitmap,  
scale-video [180] ScaleVideo,  
scroll-items [181] ScrollItems,  
select [182] GenericObjectReference,  
select-item [183] SelectItem,  
send-event [184] SendEvent,  
send-to-back [185] GenericObjectReference,  
set-box-size [186] SetBoxSize,  
set-cache-priority [187] SetCachePriority,  
set-counter-end-position [188] SetCounterEndPosition,  
set-counter-position [189] SetCounterPosition,  
set-counter-trigger [190] SetCounterTrigger,  
set-cursor-position [191] SetCursorPosition,  
set-cursor-shape [192] SetCursorShape,  
set-data [193] SetData,  
set-entry-point [194] SetEntryPoint,  
set-fill-colour [195] SetFillColor,  
set-first-item [196] SetFirstItem,  
set-font-ref [197] SetFontRef,  
set-highlight-status [198] SetHighlightStatus,  
set-interaction-status [199] SetInteractionStatus,  
set-label [200] SetLabel,  
set-line-colour [201] SetLineColour,  
set-line-style [202] SetLineStyle,  
set-line-width [203] SetLineWidth,  
set-overwrite-mode [204] SetOverwriteMode,  
set-palette-ref [205] SetPaletteRef,  
set-portion [206] SetPortion,  
set-position [207] SetPosition,  
set-slider-value [208] SetSliderValue,  
set-speed [209] SetSpeed,  
set-timer [210] SetTimer,  
set-transparency [211] SetTransparency,  
set-variable [212] SetVariable,  
set-volume [213] SetVolume,  
spawn [214] GenericObjectReference,  
step [215] Step,  
stop [216] GenericObjectReference,  
store-persistent [217] StorePersistent,  
subtract [218] Subtract,  
test-variable [219] TestVariable,

```
toggle [220] GenericObjectReference,  
toggle-item [221] ToggleItem,  
transition-to [222] TransitionTo,  
unload [223] GenericObjectReference,  
unlock-screen [224] GenericObjectReference  
}
```

```
Add ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  value GenericInteger  
}
```

```
AddItem ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  item-index GenericInteger,  
  visible-reference GenericObjectReference  
}
```

```
Append ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  append-value GenericOctetString  
}
```

```
Call ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  call-succeeded ObjectReference,  
  parameters SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Parameter OPTIONAL  
}
```

```
CallActionSlot ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  index GenericInteger  
}
```

```
Clone ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  clone-ref-var ObjectReference  
}
```

```
CloseConnection ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  connection-tag GenericInteger  
}
```

```
DelItem ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{  
  target GenericObjectReference,  
  visible-reference GenericObjectReference  
}
```

```
DeselectItem ::= SEQUENCE
```

```
{
```

```
target GenericObjectReference,  
item-index GenericInteger  
}
```

**Divide ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
value GenericInteger  
}
```

**DrawArc ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
x GenericInteger,  
y GenericInteger,  
ellipse-width GenericInteger,  
ellipse-height GenericInteger,  
start-angle GenericInteger,  
arc-angle GenericInteger  
}
```

**DrawLine ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
x1 GenericInteger,  
y1 GenericInteger,  
x2 GenericInteger,  
y2 GenericInteger  
}
```

**DrawOval ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
x GenericInteger,  
y GenericInteger,  
ellipse-width GenericInteger,  
ellipse-height GenericInteger  
}
```

**DrawPolygon ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
pointlist SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Point  
}
```

**DrawPolyline ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
pointlist SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Point  
}
```

**DrawRectangle ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{  
target GenericObjectReference,  
x1 GenericInteger,  
y1 GenericInteger,  
x2 GenericInteger,  
y2 GenericInteger  
}
```

**DrawSector ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  x GenericInteger,
  y GenericInteger,
  ellipse-width GenericInteger,
  ellipse-height GenericInteger,
  start-angle GenericInteger,
  arc-angle GenericInteger
}
```

**Fork ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  fork-succeeded ObjectReference,
  parameters SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF Parameter OPTIONAL
}
```

**GetAvailabilityStatus ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  availability-status-var ObjectReference
}
```

**GetBoxSize ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  x-box-size-var ObjectReference,
  y-box-size-var ObjectReference
}
```

**GetCellItem ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  cell-index GenericInteger,
  item-ref-var ObjectReference
}
```

**GetCursorPosition ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  x-out ObjectReference,
  y-out ObjectReference
}
```

**GetEngineSupport ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  feature GenericOctetString,
  answer ObjectReference
}
```

**GetEntryPoint ::= SEQUENCE**

```
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  entry-point-var ObjectReference
}
```

```

GetFillColour ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  fill-colour-var ObjectReference
}

GetFirstItem ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  first-item-var ObjectReference
}

GetHighlightStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  highlight-status-var ObjectReference
}

GetInteractionStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  interaction-status-var ObjectReference
}

GetItemStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  item-index GenericInteger,
  item-status-var ObjectReference
}

GetLabel ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  label-var ObjectReference
}

GetLastAnchorFired ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  last-anchor-fired-var ObjectReference
}

GetLineColour ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  line-colour-var ObjectReference
}

GetLineStyle ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  line-style-var ObjectReference
}

GetLineWidth ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  line-width-var ObjectReference
}

```

```

GetListItem ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  item-index GenericInteger,
  item-ref-var ObjectReference
}

GetListSize ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  size-var ObjectReference
}

GetOverwriteMode ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  overwrite-mode-var ObjectReference
}

GetPortion ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  portion-var ObjectReference
}

GetPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  x-position-var ObjectReference,
  y-position-var ObjectReference
}

GetRunningStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  running-status-var ObjectReference
}

GetSelectionStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  selection-status-var ObjectReference
}

GetSliderValue ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  slider-value-var ObjectReference
}

GetTextContent ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  text-content-var ObjectReference
}

GetTextData ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  text-data-var ObjectReference
}

```

```

GetTokenPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  token-position-var ObjectReference
}

GetVolume ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  volume-var ObjectReference
}

Modulo ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  value GenericInteger
}

Move ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  movement-identifier GenericInteger
}

MoveTo ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  index GenericInteger
}

Multiply ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  value GenericInteger
}

OpenConnection ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  open-succeeded ObjectReference,
  protocol GenericOctetString,
  address GenericOctetString,
  connection-tag GenericInteger
}

PutBefore ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  reference-visible GenericObjectReference
}

PutBehind ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  reference-visible GenericObjectReference
}

```

**ReadPersistent ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **read-succeeded ObjectReference,**  
  **out-variables SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF ObjectReference,**  
  **in-file-name GenericOctetString**  
}

**ScaleBitmap ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **x-scale GenericInteger,**  
  **y-scale GenericInteger**  
}

**ScaleVideo ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **x-scale GenericInteger,**  
  **y-scale GenericInteger**  
}

**ScrollItems ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **items-to-scroll GenericInteger**  
}

**SelectItem ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **item-index GenericInteger**  
}

**SendEvent ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **emulated-event-source GenericObjectReference,**  
  **emulated-event-type EventType,**  
  **emulated-event-data EmulatedEventData OPTIONAL**  
}

**SetBoxSize ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **x-new-box-size GenericInteger,**  
  **y-new-box-size GenericInteger**  
}

**SetCachePriority ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **new-cache-priority GenericInteger**  
}

**SetCounterEndPosition ::= SEQUENCE**  
{  
  **target GenericObjectReference,**  
  **new-counter-end-position GenericInteger**  
}

```
SetCounterPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-counter-position GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetCounterTrigger ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    trigger-identifier GenericInteger,
    new-counter-value GenericInteger OPTIONAL
}
```

```
SetCursorPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    x-cursor GenericInteger,
    y-cursor GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetCursorShape ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-cursor-shape GenericObjectReference OPTIONAL
}
```

```
SetData ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-content NewContent
}
```

```
SetEntryPoint ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-entry-point GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetFillColour ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-fill-colour NewColour OPTIONAL
}
```

```
SetFirstItem ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-first-item GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetFontRef ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-font NewFont
}
```

```
SetHighlightStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-highlight-status GenericBoolean
}
```

```
SetInteractionStatus ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-interaction-status GenericBoolean
}
```

```
SetLabel ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-label GenericOctetString
}
```

```
SetLineColour ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-line-colour NewColour
}
```

```
SetLineStyle ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-line-style GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetLineWidth ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-line-width GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetOverwriteMode ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-overwrite-mode GenericBoolean
}
```

```
SetPaletteRef ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-palette-ref GenericObjectReference
}
```

```
SetPortion ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-portion GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-x-position GenericInteger,
    new-y-position GenericInteger
}
```

```
SetSliderValue ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-slider-value GenericInteger
}
```

```

SetSpeed ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-speed Rational
}

SetTimer ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    timer-id GenericInteger,
    new-timer NewTimer OPTIONAL
}

NewTimer ::= SEQUENCE
{
    timer-value GenericInteger,
    absolute-time GenericBoolean OPTIONAL
}

SetTransparency ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-transparency GenericInteger
}

SetVariable ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-variable-value NewVariableValue
}

SetVolume ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    new-volume GenericInteger
}

Step ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    nb-of-steps GenericInteger
}

StorePersistent ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    store-succeeded ObjectReference,
    in-variables SEQUENCE SIZE (1..MAX) OF ObjectReference,
    out-file-name GenericOctetString
}

Subtract ::= SEQUENCE
{
    target GenericObjectReference,
    value GenericInteger
}

```

```

TestVariable ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  operator GenericInteger,
  comparison-value ComparisonValue
}

ToggleItem ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  item-index GenericInteger
}

TransitionTo ::= SEQUENCE
{
  target GenericObjectReference,
  connection-tag-or-null ConnectionTagOrNull,
  transition-effect GenericInteger OPTIONAL
}

ConnectionTagOrNull ::= CHOICE
{
  connection-tag GenericInteger,
  null NULL
}

ComparisonValue ::= CHOICE
{
  new-generic-boolean [225] GenericBoolean,
  new-generic-integer [226] GenericInteger,
  new-generic-octetstring [227] GenericOctetString,
  new-generic-object-reference [228] GenericObjectReference,
  new-generic-content-reference [229] GenericContentReference
}

EmulatedEventData ::= CHOICE
{
  new-generic-boolean [225] GenericBoolean,
  new-generic-integer [226] GenericInteger,
  new-generic-octet-string [227] GenericOctetString
}

NewColour ::= CHOICE
{
  new-colour-index [230] GenericInteger,
  new-absolute-colour [231] GenericOctetString
}

NewContent ::= CHOICE
{
  new-included-content GenericOctetString,
  new-referenced-content NewReferencedContent
}

NewFont ::= CHOICE
{
  new-font-name [232] GenericOctetString,
  new-font-reference [233] GenericObjectReference
}

```

```
NewReferencedContent ::= SEQUENCE
{
  generic-content-reference GenericContentReference,
  new-content-size [234] NewContentSize,
  new-content-cache-priority [235] GenericInteger OPTIONAL
}
```

```
NewContentSize ::= CHOICE
{
  content-size GenericInteger,
  null NULL
}
```

```
NewVariableValue ::= CHOICE
{
  new-generic-integer [226] GenericInteger,
  new-generic-boolean [225] GenericBoolean,
  new-generic-octet-string [227] GenericOctetString,
  new-generic-object-reference [228] GenericObjectReference,
  new-generic-content-reference [229] GenericContentReference
}
```

```
Parameter ::= CHOICE
{
  new-generic-boolean [225] GenericBoolean,
  new-generic-integer [226] GenericInteger,
  new-generic-octetstring [227] GenericOctetString,
  new-generic-object-reference [228] GenericObjectReference,
  new-generic-content-reference [229] GenericContentReference
}
```

```
Point ::= SEQUENCE
{
  x GenericInteger,
  y GenericInteger
}
```

```
Rational ::= SEQUENCE
{
  numerator GenericInteger,
  denominator GenericInteger OPTIONAL
}
```

-- A.43 Referencing Objects, Contents, Values, Colour and Position \_\_\_\_\_

```
ObjectReference ::= CHOICE
{
  external-reference ExternalReference,
  internal-reference INTEGER (1..MAX)
}
```

```
ExternalReference ::= SEQUENCE
{
  group-identifier OCTET STRING,
  object-number INTEGER (0..MAX)
}
```

```
IndirectReference ::= [236] ObjectReference
```

```
ContentReference ::= OCTET STRING
```

```
GenericObjectReference ::= CHOICE
{
  direct-reference ObjectReference,
  indirect-reference IndirectReference
}
```

```
GenericContentReference ::= CHOICE
{
  content-reference [69] ContentReference,
  indirect-reference IndirectReference
}
```

```
GenericInteger ::= CHOICE
{
  integer INTEGER,
  indirect-reference IndirectReference
}
```

```
GenericBoolean ::= CHOICE
{
  boolean BOOLEAN,
  indirect-reference IndirectReference
}
```

```
GenericOctetString ::= CHOICE
{
  octetstring OCTET STRING,
  indirect-reference IndirectReference
}
```

```
Colour ::= CHOICE
{
  colour-index INTEGER,
  absolute-colour OCTET STRING
}
```

```
XYPosition ::= SEQUENCE
{
  x-position INTEGER,
  y-position INTEGER
}
```

**END**

## ANNEX B

### Textual notation for MHEG-5 applications

This annex describes the textual notation of MHEG-5 objects conforming to ISO/IEC 13522-5. The alternative representation is the ASN.1 notation defined in Annex A.

#### B.1 General definitions

##### B.1.1 Code

The code set to be used by the textual notation shall be ISO/IEC 646 "Information technology – ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange". And the textual notation shall use a subset of ISO/IEC 646, which shall be the range of characters from SP (0x20) to ~ (0x7e), HT plus (0x09), LF (0x0a), FF (0x0c) and CR (0x0d).

Other characters shall not be used.

NOTE 1 – Despite the fact that the textual notation limits the character codes to be used, contents of 8-bit data can be encoded by means of QPRINTABLE (see B.3.4), BASE64 (see B.3.5) and external contents referenced by ContentReference.

NOTE 2 – An application domain could extend the character codes to be used in the textual notation as far as it does not violate the grammar. For example, characters from 0x80 to 0xfe might also be allowed for STRING and comments.

##### B.1.2 Delimiter

HT (0x09), LF (0x0a), FF (0x0c), CR (0x0d) and SP (0x20) are called delimiters.

The grammar described by the textual notation is word-based. A word is either a parenthesis ("(" or ")"), a brace ("{" or "}"), a tag (see B.1.4) or a terminal symbol (see B.3). Any number of delimiters may be inserted between any two adjacent words, without changing the interpretation of words. However, at least one delimiter shall exist between any two terminal symbols and between any tag and any terminal symbol, since they would otherwise be interpreted as a single terminal or a single tag.

##### B.1.3 Comment

"/" (0x2f 0x2f) which is not within a STRING, QPRINTABLE and BASE64 (see B.3.3, B.3.4 and B.3.5) is used to indicate the start of a comment. All characters between such "/" (including the //) and the next occurrence of a LF (0x0a), FF (0x0c) or CR (0x0d) shall be ignored.

NOTE – HT (0x09) and SP (0x20) do not indicate the end of comments.

##### B.1.4 Tag

A token starting with ":" (0x3a) is called "tag". A tag is preceded by "{" (0x7b) when it is used at the beginning of MHEG-5 objects. A tag is used to distinguish the MHEG-5 objects and their associated attribute values, in general. Tags are case insensitive, e.g. ":Root", ":root", ":ROOT", ":rOOt" and so on are all same. However, in this textual notation, some combination of upper case and lower case in tags are used for easier understanding and more readability.

## B.2 Definitions of symbols

Table B.1 shows the symbols used in the textual notation and their meanings.

**Table B.1/T.172 – Definitions of symbols in textual notation**

Symbol	Definition
::=	Is defined to be
	Alternative
<">	Double quote mark (0x22)
"text"	Literals enclosed in double quotes
<text>	Plain text description explaining the codes to be here
*	The preceding syntactic unit may be repeated zero or more times
+	The preceding syntactic unit may be repeated one or more times
[]	The enclosed syntactic unit is optional. It may occur zero or one times
.	End of clause

## B.3 Terminal symbols

All the terminal symbols used in the textual notation are defined as follows.

### B.3.1 INTEGER

A decimal or positive hexadecimal integer value.

Definition:

```
INTEGER ::= DECINT | HEXINT | "0".
DECINT  ::= ["-"] DIGIT [DIGIT0]*.
DIGIT   ::= "1" | "2" | "3" | "4" | "5" | "6" | "7" | "8" | "9".
DIGIT0  ::= DIGIT | "0".
HEXINT  ::= HEXPREFIX HEXDIGIT0 [HEXDIGIT0]*.
HEXPREFIX ::= "0x" | "0X".
HEXDIGIT0 ::= DIGIT | "0" | "a" | "b" | "c" | "d" | "e" | "f" | "A" | "B" | "C" | "D" | "E" | "F".
```

### B.3.2 BOOLEAN

A Boolean value may be either true or false. The BOOLEAN terminal is case insensitive, i.e. "True", "TRUE" and "true" are one and the same, "False", "FALSE" and "false" are one and the same.

Definition:

```
BOOLEAN ::= "true" | "false".
```

### B.3.3 STRING

A string value enclosed in the double quotes may contain an arbitrary number of printable characters (from 0x20 to 0x7e). A double quote (0x22) within a STRING shall be encoded as "\" (0x5c 0x22). And a backslash (0x5c) shall be encoded as "\\" (0x5c 0x5c).

Note that no line breaks are not to be included in STRING, i.e. multi-line text content shall be encoded using QPRINTABLE or BASE64.

Definition:

**STRING** ::= <"> **STRINGCHAR**\* <">.  
**STRINGCHAR** ::= <any single printable character except <"> and "'> | "\'" | "\\".

### B.3.4 QPRINTABLE

A string value enclosed in the single quotes shall contain a Quoted-Printable encoded content as defined in RFC 1521. However, " '" (0x27) shall be encoded as =27. The lower case characters such as "a", "b", "c", "d", "e" and "f" may be used as a general 8-bit representation defined by section 5.1 rule #1 in RFC 1521. The number of characters in a line is not limited. Line breaks need not to be converted to CR (0x0d)/LF (0x0a); however, at least one of LF (0x0a), FF (0x0c) and CR (0x0d) shall be used representing a line break.

Definition:

**QPRINTABLE** ::= "'" **QPRINTABLECHAR**\* "'" .  
**QPRINTABLECHAR** ::= <a character as defined above> | <encoding sequence of a character as defined above>.

### B.3.5 BASE64

A string value enclosed in the back quotes shall contain a BASE64 encoded content as defined in RFC 1521. However, the number of characters in a line is not limited in this standard. The encoded BASE64 content may be split into several segments by at least one of LF (0x0a), FF (0x0c) or CR (0x0d). However, these characters shall be ignored, and the input BASE64 encoded segments shall be handled as if they were in one line.

Definition:

**BASE64** ::= "" **BASE64CHAR**\* "" .  
**BASE64CHAR** ::= <an encoding sequence of a character as defined above>.

### B.3.6 Null

Null represents a special terminal whose semantics depends on the MHEG-5 objects definition. The Null terminal is case insensitive, i.e. "NULL" and "null" are one and the same.

Definition:

**Null** ::= "NULL".

### B.3.7 Enumeration values

A terminal word starting with an alphabet character is called "enumeration value" (all enumeration values are enclosed within two double quotations in the following grammar). An enumeration value is used as one of the terminal symbols which represents a specific semantics depending on its usage. All enumeration values are case insensitive, i.e. "IsAvailable" and "isavailable" are the same.

## B.4 MHEG-5 Object Definitions

The textual notation of MHEG-5 objects are defined as follows.

Table B.2 summarises the abbreviations used in tags and made them in reasonable lengths while keeping the readability.

**Table B.2/T.172 – Tag abbreviations**

Bordered Bounding Box	BBBox
Content Cache Priority	CCPriority
Content Hook	Chook
Coordinate System	CS
Generic	G
Group Cache Priority	GCPriority
Horizontal Justification	HJustification
Identifier	ID
Information	Info
Interchanged	Interchg
OctetString	OString
Original	Orig
Program	Prg
Reference	Ref
Register	Reg
Standard	Std
Variable	Var (except for elementary action tags)
Vertical Justification	VJustification

#### **B.4.1 Root Class**

**Root** ::= **ObjectIdentifier**.  
**ObjectIdentifier** ::= **ObjectReference**.

#### **B.4.2 Group Class**

**Group** ::= **Root** [**StandardIdentifier**]  
[**StandardVersion**] [**ObjectInformation**]  
[**OnStartUp**] [**OnCloseDown**]  
[**OriginalGroupCachePriority**] [**Items**].  
**StandardIdentifier** ::= "StdID" **JointIsoItuIdentifier**  
**MHEGStandardIdentifier**.  
**JointIsoItuIdentifier** ::= **INTEGER**.  
**MHEGStandardIdentifier** ::= **INTEGER**.  
**StandardVersion** ::= "StdVersion" **INTEGER**.  
**ObjectInformation** ::= "ObjectInfo" **OctetString**.  
**OnStartUp** ::= "OnStartUp" **ActionClass**.  
**OnCloseDown** ::= "OnCloseDown" **ActionClass**.  
**OriginalGroupCachePriority** ::= "OrigGCPriority" **INTEGER**.  
**Items** ::= "Items" "(" **GroupItem** "+" ")".  
**GroupItem** ::= **ResidentProgramClass** |  
**RemoteProgramClass** |  
**InterchangedProgramClass** |  
**PaletteClass** |  
**FontClass** |  
**CursorShapeClass** |  
**BooleanVariableClass** |  
**IntegerVariableClass** |  
**OctetStringVariableClass** |  
**ObjectRefVariableClass** |  
**ContentRefVariableClass** |

LinkClass |  
 StreamClass |  
 BitmapClass |  
 LineArtClass |  
 DynamicLineArtClass |  
 RectangleClass |  
 HotspotClass |  
 SwitchButtonClass |  
 PushButtonClass |  
 TextClass |  
 EntryFieldClass |  
 HyperTextClass |  
 SliderClass |  
 TokenGroupClass |  
 ListGroupClass.

### B.4.3 Application Class

**ApplicationClass** ::= "{:Application" Group  
 [OnSpawnCloseDown] [OnRestart]  
 [DefaultAttributes] }".  
**OnSpawnCloseDown** ::= ":OnSpawnCloseDown" ActionClass.  
**OnRestart** ::= ":OnRestart" ActionClass.  
**DefaultAttributes** ::= DefaultAttribute+.  
**DefaultAttribute** ::= CharacterSet | BackgroundColour  
 | TextContentHook  
 | TextColour | Font  
 | FontAttributes  
 | InterchangedProgramContentHook  
 | StreamContentHook  
 | BitmapContentHook  
 | LineArtContentHook | ButtonRefColour  
 | HighlightRefColour | SliderRefColour.  
**CharacterSet** ::= ":CharacterSet" INTEGER.  
**BackgroundColour** ::= ":BackgroundColour" Colour.  
**TextContentHook** ::= ":TextCHook" INTEGER.  
**TextColour** ::= ":TextColour" Colour.  
**Font** ::= ":Font" FontBody.  
**FontBody** ::= DirectFont | IndirectFont.  
**DirectFont** ::= OctetString.  
**IndirectFont** ::= ObjectReference.  
**FontAttributes** ::= ":FontAttributes" OctetString.  
**InterchangedProgramContentHook** ::= ":InterchgPrgCHook" INTEGER.  
**StreamContentHook** ::= ":StreamCHook" INTEGER.  
**BitmapContentHook** ::= ":BitmapCHook" INTEGER.  
**LineArtContentHook** ::= ":LineArtCHook" INTEGER.  
**ButtonRefColour** ::= ":ButtonRefColour" Colour.  
**HighlightRefColour** ::= ":HighlightRefColour" Colour.  
**SliderRefColour** ::= ":SliderRefColour" Colour.

### B.4.4 Scene Class

**SceneClass** ::= "{:Scene" Group InputEventRegister  
 SceneCoordinateSystem [AspectRatio]  
 [MovingCursor] [NextScenes] }".  
**InputEventRegister** ::= ":InputEventReg" INTEGER.  
**SceneCoordinateSystem** ::= ":SceneCS" XScene YScene.  
**XScene** ::= INTEGER.  
**YScene** ::= INTEGER.  
**AspectRatio** ::= ":AspectRatio" Width Height.  
**Width** ::= INTEGER.

**Height** ::= INTEGER.  
**MovingCursor** ::= ":MovingCursor" BOOLEAN.  
**NextScenes** ::= ":NextScenes" "(" NextScene+ ")".  
**NextScene** ::= "(" SceneRef SceneWeight ")".  
**SceneRef** ::= OctetString.  
**SceneWeight** ::= INTEGER.

#### B.4.5 Ingredient Class

**Ingredient** ::= Root [InitiallyActive] [ContentHook]  
 [OriginalContent] [Shared].  
**InitiallyActive** ::= ":InitiallyActive" BOOLEAN.  
**ContentHook** ::= ":CHook" INTEGER.  
**OriginalContent** ::= ":OrigContent" ContentBody.  
**ContentBody** ::= IncludedContent | ReferencedContent.  
**IncludedContent** ::= OctetString.  
**ReferencedContent** ::= ":ContentRef" "(" ContentReference  
 [ContentSize] [ContentCachePriority]  
 ")".  
**ContentSize** ::= ":ContentSize" INTEGER.  
**ContentCachePriority** ::= ":CCPriority" INTEGER.  
**Shared** ::= ":Shared" BOOLEAN.

#### B.4.6 Link Class

**LinkClass** ::= "{:Link" Ingredient LinkCondition  
 LinkEffect }".  
**LinkCondition** ::= EventSource EventType [EventData].  
**EventSource** ::= ":EventSource" ObjectReference.  
**EventType** ::= ":EventType" EventTypeEnum.  
**EventTypeEnum** ::= "IsAvailable" | "ContentAvailable"  
 | "IsDeleted" | "IsRunning"  
 | "IsStopped" | "UserInput"  
 | "AnchorFired" | "TimerFired"  
 | "AsynchStopped" | "InteractionCompleted"  
 | "TokenMovedFrom" | "TokenMovedTo"  
 | "StreamEvent" | "StreamPlaying"  
 | "StreamStopped" | "CounterTrigger"  
 | "HighlightOn" | "HighlightOff"  
 | "CursorEnter" | "CursorLeave"  
 | "IsSelected" | "IsDeselected"  
 | "TestEvent" | "FirstItemPresented"  
 | "LastItemPresented" | "HeadItems"  
 | "TailItems" | "ItemSelected"  
 | "ItemDeselected" | "EntryFieldFull"  
 | "EngineEvent".  
**EventData** ::= ":EventData" EventDataBody.  
**EventDataBody** ::= OctetString | BOOLEAN | INTEGER.  
**LinkEffect** ::= ":LinkEffect" ActionClass.

#### B.4.7 Program Class

**Program** ::= Ingredient Name [InitiallyAvailable].  
**Name** ::= ":Name" OctetString.  
**InitiallyAvailable** ::= ":InitiallyAvailable" BOOLEAN.

#### B.4.8 ResidentProgram Class

**ResidentProgramClass** ::= "{:ResidentPrg" Program }".

#### **B.4.9 RemoteProgram Class**

**RemoteProgramClass** ::= "{:RemotePrg" Program  
[ProgramConnectionTag] }".  
**ProgramConnectionTag** ::= ":ConnectionTag" INTEGER.

#### **B.4.10 InterchangedProgram Class**

**InterchangedProgramClass** ::= "{:InterchgPrg" Program }".

#### **B.4.11 Palette Class**

**PaletteClass** ::= "{:Palette" Ingredient }".

#### **B.4.12 Font Class**

**FontClass** ::= "{:Font" Ingredient }".

#### **B.4.13 CursorShape Class**

**CursorShapeClass** ::= "{:CursorShape" Ingredient }".

#### **B.4.14 Variable Class**

**Variable** ::= Ingredient OriginalValue.  
**OriginalValue** ::= ":OrigValue" OriginalValueBody.  
**OriginalValueBody** ::= BOOLEAN | INTEGER | OctetString  
| ObjectReferenceValue  
| ContentReferenceValue.  
**ObjectReferenceValue** ::= ":ObjectRef" ObjectReference.  
**ContentReferenceValue** ::= ":ContentRef" ContentReference.

#### **B.4.15 BooleanVariable Class**

**BooleanVariableClass** ::= "{:BooleanVar" Variable }".

#### **B.4.16 IntegerVariable Class**

**IntegerVariableClass** ::= "{:IntegerVar" Variable }".

#### **B.4.17 OctetStringVariable Class**

**OctetStringVariableClass** ::= "{:OStringVar" Variable }".

#### **B.4.18 ObjectRefVariable Class**

**ObjectRefVariableClass** ::= "{:ObjectRefVar" Variable }".

#### **B.4.19 ContentRefVariable Class**

**ContentRefVariableClass** ::= "{:ContentRefVar" Variable }".

#### **B.4.20 Presentable Class**

**Presentable** ::= Ingredient.

### B.4.21 TokenManager Class

TokenManager ::= [MovementTable].  
MovementTable ::= ":MovementTable" "(" Movement+ ")".  
Movement ::= "(" TargetElement+ ")".  
TargetElement ::= INTEGER.

### B.4.22 TokenGroup Class

TokenGroupClass ::= "{:TokenGroup" TokenGroupBody }".  
TokenGroupBody ::= Presentable TokenManager TokenGroupItems  
[NoTokenActionSlots].  
TokenGroupItems ::= ":TokenGroupItems" "(" TokenGroupItem+ ")".  
TokenGroupItem ::= "(" AVisible [ActionSlots] ")".  
AVisible ::= ObjectReference.  
ActionSlots ::= ":ActionSlots" "(" ActionSlot+ ")".  
ActionSlot ::= ActionClass | Null.  
NoTokenActionSlots ::= ":NoTokenActionSlots" "(" ActionSlot+ ")".

### B.4.23 ListGroup Class

ListGroupClass ::= "{:ListGroup" TokenGroupBody  
Positions [WrapAround]  
[MultipleSelection] }".  
Positions ::= ":Positions" "(" Position+ ")".  
Position ::= "(" XYPosition ")".  
WrapAround ::= ":WrapAround" BOOLEAN.  
MultipleSelection ::= ":MultipleSelection" BOOLEAN.

### B.4.24 Visible Class

Visible ::= Presentable OriginalBoxSize  
[OriginalPosition] [OriginalPaletteRef].  
OriginalBoxSize ::= ":OrigBoxSize" BoxSize.  
BoxSize ::= XLength YLength.  
XLength ::= INTEGER.  
YLength ::= INTEGER.  
OriginalPosition ::= ":OrigPosition" XYPosition.  
OriginalPaletteRef ::= ":OrigPaletteRef" ObjectReference.

### B.4.25 Bitmap Class

BitmapClass ::= "{:Bitmap" Visible [Tiling]  
[OriginalTransparency] }".  
Tiling ::= ":Tiling" BOOLEAN.  
OriginalTransparency ::= ":OrigTransparency" INTEGER.

### B.4.26 LineArt Class

LineArtClass ::= "{:LineArt" LineArtBody }".  
LineArtBody ::= Visible [BorderedBoundingBox]  
[OriginalLineWidth]  
[OriginalLineStyle]  
[OriginalRefLineColour]  
[OriginalRefFillColour] }".  
BorderedBoundingBox ::= ":BBox" BOOLEAN.  
OriginalLineWidth ::= ":OrigLineWidth" INTEGER.  
OriginalLineStyle ::= ":OrigLineStyle" INTEGER.  
OriginalRefLineColour ::= ":OrigRefLineColour" Colour.  
OriginalRefFillColour ::= ":OrigRefFillColour" Colour.

#### B.4.27 Rectangle Class

RectangleClass ::= "{:Rectangle" LineArtBody "}".

#### B.4.28 DynamicLineArt Class

DynamicLineArtClass ::= "{:DynamicLineArt" LineArtBody "}".

#### B.4.29 Text Class

TextClass ::= "{:Text" TextBody "}".

TextBody ::= Visible [OriginalFont] [FontAttributes]  
[TextColour] [BackgroundColour]  
[CharacterSet]  
[HorizontalJustification]  
[VerticalJustification]  
[LineOrientation] [StartCorner]  
[TextWrapping].

OriginalFont ::= ":OrigFont" FontBody.

HorizontalJustification ::= ":HJustification" JustificationEnum.

JustificationEnum ::= "start" | "end" | "centre" | "justified".

VerticalJustification ::= ":VJustification" JustificationEnum.

LineOrientation ::= ":LineOrientation" LineOrientationEnum.

LineOrientationEnum ::= "vertical" | "horizontal".

StartCorner ::= ":StartCorner" StartCornerEnum.

StartCornerEnum ::= "upper-left" | "upper-right"  
| "lower-left" | "lower-right".

TextWrapping ::= ":TextWrapping" BOOLEAN.

#### B.4.30 Stream Class

StreamClass ::= "{:Stream" Presentable Multiplex  
[Storage] [Looping] "}".

Multiplex ::= ":Multiplex" "(" StreamComponent+ ")".

StreamComponent ::= AudioClass | VideoClass | RTGraphicsClass.

Storage ::= ":Storage" StorageEnum.

StorageEnum ::= "memory" | "stream".

Looping ::= ":Looping" INTEGER.

#### B.4.31 Audio Class

AudioClass ::= "{:Audio" Presentable ComponentTag  
[OriginalVolume] "}".

ComponentTag ::= ":ComponentTag" INTEGER.

OriginalVolume ::= ":OrigVolume" INTEGER.

#### B.4.32 Video Class

VideoClass ::= "{:Video" Visible ComponentTag  
[Termination].

Termination ::= ":Termination" TerminationEnum.

TerminationEnum ::= "freeze" | "disappear".

#### B.4.33 RTGraphics Class

RTGraphicsClass ::= "{:RTGraphics" Visible ComponentTag  
[Termination] "}".

### B.4.34 Interactable Class

**Interactable** ::= [EngineResp] [HighlightRefColour].  
**EngineResp** ::= ":EngineResp" BOOLEAN.

### B.4.35 Slider Class

**SliderClass** ::= "{:Slider" Visible Interactable  
Orientation MaxValue [MinValue]  
[InitialValue] [InitialPortion]  
[StepSize] [SliderStyle]  
[SliderRefColour] }".  
**Orientation** ::= ":Orientation" OrientationEnum.  
**OrientationEnum** ::= "left" | "right" | "up" | "down".  
**MaxValue** ::= ":MaxValue" INTEGER.  
**MinValue** ::= ":MinValue" INTEGER.  
**InitialValue** ::= ":InitialValue" INTEGER.  
**InitialPortion** ::= ":InitialPortion" INTEGER.  
**StepSize** ::= ":StepSize" INTEGER.  
**SliderStyle** ::= ":SliderStyle" SliderStyleEnum.  
**SliderStyleEnum** ::= "normal" | "thermometer" | "proportional".

### B.4.36 EntryField Class

**EntryFieldClass** ::= "{:EntryField" TextBody Interactable  
[InputType] [CharList]  
[ObscuredInput] [MaxLength] }".  
**InputType** ::= ":InputType" InputTypeEnum.  
**InputTypeEnum** ::= "alpha" | "numeric" | "any" | "listed".  
**CharList** ::= ":CharList" OctetString.  
**ObscuredInput** ::= ":ObscuredInput" BOOLEAN.  
**MaxLength** ::= ":MaxLength" INTEGER.

### B.4.37 HyperText Class

**HyperTextClass** ::= "{:HyperText" TextBody Interactable  
}".

### B.4.38 Button Class

**Button** ::= Visible Interactable [ButtonRefColour].

### B.4.39 Hotspot Class

**HotspotClass** ::= "{:Hotspot" Button }".

### B.4.40 PushButton Class

**PushButtonClass** ::= "{:PushButton" PushButtonBody }".  
**PushButtonBody** ::= Button [OriginalLabel] [CharacterSet].  
**OriginalLabel** ::= ":OrigLabel" OctetString.

### B.4.41 SwitchButton Class

**SwitchButtonClass** ::= "{:SwitchButton" PushButtonBody  
ButtonStyle }".  
**ButtonStyle** ::= ":ButtonStyle" ButtonStyleEnum.  
**ButtonStyleEnum** ::= "pushbutton" | "radiobutton" | "checkbox".

## B.4.42 Action Class

**ActionClass ::= "(" ElementaryAction+ ")".**

**ElementaryAction ::= Activate**

- | **Add**
- | **AddItem**
- | **Append**
- | **BringToFront**
- | **Call**
- | **CallActionSlot**
- | **Clear**
- | **Clone**
- | **CloseConnection**
- | **Deactivate**
- | **DelItem**
- | **Deselect**
- | **DeselectItem**
- | **Divide**
- | **DrawArc**
- | **DrawLine**
- | **DrawOval**
- | **DrawPolygon**
- | **DrawPolyline**
- | **DrawRectangle**
- | **DrawSector**
- | **Fork**
- | **GetAvailabilityStatus**
- | **GetBoxSize**
- | **GetCellItem**
- | **GetCursorPosition**
- | **GetEngineSupport**
- | **GetEntryPoint**
- | **GetFillColour**
- | **GetFirstItem**
- | **GetHighlightStatus**
- | **GetInteractionStatus**
- | **GetItemStatus**
- | **GetLabel**
- | **GetLastAnchorFired**
- | **GetLineColour**
- | **GetLineStyle**
- | **GetLineWidth**
- | **GetListItem**
- | **GetListSize**
- | **GetOverwriteMode**
- | **GetPortion**
- | **GetPosition**
- | **GetRunningStatus**
- | **GetSelectionStatus**
- | **GetSliderValue**
- | **GetTextContent**
- | **GetTextData**
- | **GetTokenPosition**
- | **GetVolume**
- | **Launch**
- | **LockScreen**
- | **Modulo**
- | **Move**
- | **MoveTo**
- | **Multiply**

| **OpenConnection**  
 | **Preload**  
 | **PutBefore**  
 | **PutBehind**  
 | **Quit**  
 | **ReadPersistent**  
 | **Run**  
 | **ScaleBitmap**  
 | **ScaleVideo**  
 | **ScrollItems**  
 | **Select**  
 | **SelectItem**  
 | **SendEvent**  
 | **SendToBack**  
 | **SetBoxSize**  
 | **SetCachePriority**  
 | **SetCounterEndPosition**  
 | **SetCounterPosition**  
 | **SetCounterTrigger**  
 | **SetCursorPosition**  
 | **SetCursorShape**  
 | **SetData**  
 | **SetEntryPoint**  
 | **SetFillColour**  
 | **SetFirstItem**  
 | **SetFontRef**  
 | **SetHighlightStatus**  
 | **SetInteractionStatus**  
 | **SetLabel**  
 | **SetLineColour**  
 | **SetLineStyle**  
 | **SetLineWidth**  
 | **SetOverwriteMode**  
 | **SetPaletteRef**  
 | **SetPortion**  
 | **SetPosition**  
 | **SetSliderValue**  
 | **SetSpeed**  
 | **SetTimer**  
 | **SetTransparency**  
 | **SetVariable**  
 | **SetVolume**  
 | **Spawn**  
 | **Step**  
 | **Stop**  
 | **StorePersistent**  
 | **Subtract**  
 | **TestVariable**  
 | **Toggle**  
 | **ToggleItem**  
 | **TransitionTo**  
 | **Unload**  
 | **UnlockScreen.**

**Activate** ::= ":Activate" "(" Target ")".  
**Add** ::= ":Add" "(" Target Value ")".  
**AddItem** ::= ":AddItem" "(" Target ItemIndex  
 VisibleReference ")".  
**Append** ::= ":Append" "(" Target AppendValue ")".  
**BringToFront** ::= ":BringToFront" "(" Target ")".

**Call** ::= ":Call" "(" Target CallSucceeded  
[Parameters] ")".  
**CallActionSlot** ::= ":CallActionSlot" "(" Target Index ")".  
**Clear** ::= ":Clear" "(" Target ")".  
**Clone** ::= ":Clone" "(" Target CloneRefVar ")".  
**CloseConnection** ::= ":CloseConnection" "(" Target  
ConnectionTag ")".  
**Deactivate** ::= ":Deactivate" "(" Target ")".  
**DelItem** ::= ":DelItem" "(" Target VisibleReference  
")".  
**Deselect** ::= ":Deselect" "(" Target ")".  
**DeselectItem** ::= ":DeselectItem" "(" Target ItemIndex ")".  
**Divide** ::= ":Divide" "(" Target Value ")".  
**DrawArc** ::= ":DrawArc" "(" Target X Y EllipseWidth  
EllipseHeight StartAngle ArcAngle ")".  
**DrawLine** ::= ":DrawLine" "(" Target X1 Y1 X2 Y2 ")".  
**DrawOval** ::= ":DrawOval" "(" Target X Y EllipseWidth  
EllipseHeight ")".  
**DrawPolygon** ::= ":DrawPolygon" "(" Target PointList ")".  
**DrawPolyline** ::= ":DrawPolyline" "(" Target PointList ")".  
**DrawRectangle** ::= ":DrawRectangle" "(" Target X1 Y1 X2 Y2  
")".  
**DrawSector** ::= ":DrawSector" "(" Target X Y EllipseWidth  
EllipseHeight StartAngle ArcAngle ")".  
**Fork** ::= ":Fork" "(" Target ForkSucceeded  
[Parameters] ")".  
**GetAvailabilityStatus** ::= ":GetAvailabilityStatus" "(" Target  
AvailabilityStatusVar ")".  
**GetBoxSize** ::= ":GetBoxSize" "(" Target XBoxSizeVar  
YBoxSizeVar ")".  
**GetCellItem** ::= ":GetCellItem" "(" Target CellIndex  
ItemRefVar ")".  
**GetCursorPosition** ::= ":GetCursorPosition" "(" Target XOut YOut  
")".  
**GetEngineSupport** ::= ":GetEngineSupport" "(" Target Feature  
Answer ")".  
**GetEntryPoint** ::= ":GetEntryPoint" "(" Target EntryPointVar  
")".  
**GetFillColour** ::= ":GetFillColour" "(" Target FillColourVar  
")".  
**GetFirstItem** ::= ":GetFirstItem" "(" Target FirstItemVar  
")".  
**GetHighlightStatus** ::= ":GetHighlightStatus" "(" Target  
HighlightStatusVar ")".  
**GetInteractionStatus** ::= ":GetInteractionStatus" "(" Target  
InteractionStatusVar ")".  
**GetItemStatus** ::= ":GetItemStatus" "(" Target  
ItemIndex ItemStatusVar ")".  
**GetLabel** ::= ":GetLabel" "(" Target LabelVar ")".  
**GetLastAnchorFired** ::= ":GetLastAnchorFired" "(" Target  
LastAnchorFiredVar ")".  
**GetLineColour** ::= ":GetLineColour" "(" Target LineColourVar  
")".  
**GetLineStyle** ::= ":GetLineStyle" "(" Target LineStyleVar  
")".  
**GetLineWidth** ::= ":GetLineWidth" "(" Target LineWidthVar  
")".  
**GetListItem** ::= ":GetListItem" "(" Target ItemIndex  
ItemRefVar ")".  
**GetListSize** ::= ":GetListSize" "(" Target SizeVar ")".

```

GetOverwriteMode      ::= ":GetOverwriteMode" "(" Target
                        OverwriteModeVar ")".
GetPortion            ::= ":GetPortion" "(" Target PortionVar ")".
GetPosition           ::= ":GetPosition" "(" Target XPositionVar
                        YPositionVar ")".
GetRunningStatus     ::= ":GetRunningStatus" "(" Target
                        RunningStatusVar ")".
GetSelectionStatus   ::= ":GetSelectionStatus" "(" Target
                        SelectionStatusVar ")".
GetSliderValue       ::= ":GetSliderValue" "(" Target
                        SliderValueVar ")".
GetTextContent       ::= ":GetTextContent" "(" Target
                        TextContentVar ")".
GetTextData          ::= ":GetTextData" "(" Target TextDataVar ")".
GetTokenPosition     ::= ":GetTokenPosition" "(" Target
                        TokenPositionVar ")".
GetVolume            ::= ":GetVolume" "(" Target VolumeVar ")".
Launch               ::= ":Launch" "(" Target ")".
LockScreen           ::= ":LockScreen" "(" Target ")".
Modulo               ::= ":Modulo" "(" Target Value ")".
Move                 ::= ":Move" "(" Target MovementIdentifier ")".
MoveTo               ::= ":MoveTo" "(" Target Index ")".
Multiply             ::= ":Multiply" "(" Target Value ")".
OpenConnection       ::= ":OpenConnection" "(" Target OpenSucceeded
                        Protocol Address ConnectionTag ")".
Preload              ::= ":Preload" "(" Target ")".
PutBefore            ::= ":PutBefore" "(" Target ReferenceVisible
                        ")".
PutBehind            ::= ":PutBehind" "(" Target ReferenceVisible
                        ")".
Quit                 ::= ":Quit" "(" Target ")".
ReadPersistent       ::= ":ReadPersistent" "(" Target ReadSucceeded
                        OutVariables InFileName ")".
Run                  ::= ":Run" "(" Target ")".
ScaleBitmap          ::= ":ScaleBitmap" "(" Target XScale YScale
                        ")".
ScaleVideo           ::= ":ScaleVideo" "(" Target XScale YScale ")".
ScrollItems          ::= ":ScrollItems" "(" Target ItemsToScroll ")".
Select               ::= ":Select" "(" Target ")".
SelectItem           ::= ":SelectItem" "(" Target ItemIndex ")".
SendEvent            ::= ":SendEvent" "(" Target EmulatedEventSource
                        EmulatedEventType [EmulatedEventData]
                        ")".
SendToBack           ::= ":SendToBack" "(" Target ")".
SetBoxSize           ::= ":SetBoxSize" "(" Target XNewBoxSize
                        YNewBoxSize ")".
SetCachePriority     ::= ":SetCachePriority" "(" Target
                        NewCachePriority ")".
SetCounterEndPosition ::= ":SetCounterEndPosition" "(" Target
                        NewCounterEndPosition ")".
SetCounterPosition  ::= ":SetCounterPosition" "(" Target
                        NewCounterPosition ")".
SetCounterTrigger    ::= ":SetCounterTrigger" "(" Target
                        TriggerIdentifier [NewCounterValue]
                        ")".
SetCursorPosition   ::= ":SetCursorPosition" "(" Target XCursor
                        YCursor ")".
SetCursorShape       ::= ":SetCursorShape" "(" Target
                        [NewCursorShape] ")".
SetData              ::= ":SetData" "(" Target NewContent ")".

```

**SetEntryPoint** ::= ":SetEntryPoint" "(" Target NewEntryPoint  
 ")".  
**SetFillColor** ::= ":SetFillColor" "(" Target [NewColour]  
 ")".  
**SetFirstItem** ::= ":SetFirstItem" "(" Target NewFirstItem  
 ")".  
**SetFontRef** ::= ":SetFontRef" "(" Target NewFont ")".  
**SetHighlightStatus** ::= ":SetHighlightStatus" "(" Target  
 NewHighlightStatus ")".  
**SetInteractionStatus** ::= ":SetInteractionStatus" "(" Target  
 NewInteractionStatus ")".  
**SetLabel** ::= ":SetLabel" "(" Target NewLabel ")".  
**SetLineColour** ::= ":SetLineColour" "(" Target NewColour ")".  
**SetLineStyle** ::= ":SetLineStyle" "(" Target NewLineStyle  
 ")".  
**SetLineWidth** ::= ":SetLineWidth" "(" Target NewLineWidth  
 ")".  
**SetOverwriteMode** ::= ":SetOverwriteMode" "(" Target  
 NewOverwriteMode ")".  
**SetPaletteRef** ::= ":SetPaletteRef" "(" Target NewPaletteRef  
 ")".  
**SetPortion** ::= ":SetPortion" "(" Target NewPortion ")".  
**SetPosition** ::= ":SetPosition" "(" Target NewXPosition  
 NewYPosition ")".  
**SetSliderValue** ::= ":SetSliderValue" "(" Target  
 NewSliderValue ")".  
**SetSpeed** ::= ":SetSpeed" "(" Target NewSpeed ")".  
**SetTimer** ::= ":SetTimer" "(" Target TimerID  
 [TimerValue] [AbsoluteTime] ")".  
**SetTransparency** ::= ":SetTransparency" "(" Target  
 NewTransparency ")".  
**SetVariable** ::= ":SetVariable" "(" Target  
 NewVariableValue ")".  
**SetVolume** ::= ":SetVolume" "(" Target NewVolume ")".  
**Spawn** ::= ":Spawn" "(" Target ")".  
**Stop** ::= ":Stop" "(" Target ")".  
**Step** ::= ":Step" "(" Target NbOfSteps ")".  
**StorePersistent** ::= ":StorePersistent" "(" Target  
 StoreSucceeded InVariables OutFileName  
 ")".  
**Subtract** ::= ":Subtract" "(" Target Value ")".  
**TestVariable** ::= ":TestVariable" "(" Target Operator  
 ComparisonValue ")".  
**Toggle** ::= ":Toggle" "(" Target ")".  
**ToggleItem** ::= ":ToggleItem" "(" Target ItemIndex ")".  
**TransitionTo** ::= ":TransitionTo" "(" Target [ConnectionTag]  
 [TransitionEffect] ")".  
**Unload** ::= ":Unload" "(" Target ")".  
**UnlockScreen** ::= ":UnlockScreen" "(" Target ")".  
  
**AbsoluteTime** ::= ":AbsoluteTime" GenericBoolean.  
**Address** ::= GenericOctetString.  
**Answer** ::= ObjectReference.  
**AppendValue** ::= GenericOctetString.  
**ArcAngle** ::= GenericInteger.  
**AvailabilityStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**CallSucceeded** ::= ObjectReference.  
**CellIndex** ::= GenericInteger.  
**CloneRefVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**ComparisonValue** ::= NewGenericBoolean | NewGenericInteger  
| NewGenericOctetString  
| NewGenericObjectReference  
| NewGenericContentReference.

**ConnectionTag** ::= ":ConnectionTag" GenericInteger.

**Denominator** ::= GenericInteger.

**EllipseHeight** ::= GenericInteger.

**EllipseWidth** ::= GenericInteger.

**EmulatedEventData** ::= NewGenericBoolean | NewGenericInteger  
| NewGenericOctetString.

**EmulatedEventSource** ::= GenericObjectReference .

**EmulatedEventType** ::= EventTypeEnum.

**EntryPointVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**ForkSucceeded** ::= ObjectReference.

**Feature** ::= GenericOctetString.

**FillColourVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**FirstItemVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**HighlightStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**Index** ::= GenericInteger.

**InFileName** ::= GenericOctetString.

**InteractionStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**InVariables** ::= "(" ObjectReference+ ")".

**ItemIndex** ::= GenericInteger.

**ItemRefVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**ItemStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**ItemsToScroll** ::= GenericInteger.

**LabelVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**LastAnchorFiredVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**LineColourVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**LineStyleVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**LineWidthVar** ::= ObjectReference.

**MovementIdentifier** ::= GenericInteger.

**NbOfSteps** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewAbsoluteColour** ::= ":NewAbsoluteColour" GenericOctetString.

**NewCachePriority** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewColour** ::= NewColourIndex | NewAbsoluteColour.

**NewColourIndex** ::= ":NewColourIndex" GenericInteger.

**NewContent** ::= NewIncludedContent | NewReferencedContent.

**NewContentCachePriority** ::= ":NewCCPriority" GenericInteger.

**NewCounterEndPosition** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewCounterPosition** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewContentSize** ::= ":NewContentSize" GenericInteger.

**NewCounterValue** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewCursorShape** ::= GenericObjectReference.

**NewEntryPoint** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewFirstItem** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewFont** ::= NewFontName | NewFontReference.

**NewFontName** ::= NewGenericOctetString.

**NewFontReference** ::= NewGenericObjectReference.

**NewGenericBoolean** ::= ":GBoolean" GenericBoolean.

**NewGenericInteger** ::= ":GInteger" GenericInteger.

**NewGenericOctetString** ::= ":GOctetString" GenericOctetString.

**NewGenericObjectReference** ::= ":GObjectRef" GenericObjectReference.

**NewGenericContentReference** ::= ":GContentRef" GenericContentReference.

**NewHighlightStatus** ::= GenericBoolean.

**NewIncludedContent** ::= GenericOctetString.

**NewInteractionStatus** ::= GenericBoolean.

**NewLabel** ::= GenericOctetString.

**NewLineStyle** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewLineWidth** ::= GenericInteger.

**NewOverwriteMode** ::= GenericBoolean.

**NewPaletteRef** ::= GenericObjectReference.  
**NewPortion** ::= GenericInteger.  
**NewReferencedContent** ::= ":NewRefContent" "(" GenericContentReference  
    [NewContentSize]  
    [NewContentCachePriority] ")".  
**NewSliderValue** ::= GenericInteger.  
**NewSpeed** ::= Rational.  
**NewTransparency** ::= GenericInteger.  
**NewVariableValue** ::= NewGenericInteger | NewGenericBoolean  
    | NewGenericOctetString  
    | NewGenericObjectReference  
    | NewGenericContentReference.  
**NewVolume** ::= GenericInteger.  
**NewXPosition** ::= GenericInteger.  
**NewYPosition** ::= GenericInteger.  
**Numerator** ::= GenericInteger.  
**OpenSucceeded** ::= ObjectReference.  
**Operator** ::= GenericInteger.  
**OutFileName** ::= GenericOctetString.  
**OutVariables** ::= "(" ObjectReference+ ")".  
**OverwriteModeVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**Parameter** ::= NewGenericBoolean | NewGenericInteger  
    | NewGenericOctetString  
    | NewGenericObjectReference  
    | NewGenericContentReference.  
**Parameters** ::= Parameter+.  
**Point** ::= "(" X Y ")".  
**PointList** ::= "(" Point+ ")".  
**PortionVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**Protocol** ::= GenericOctetString.  
**Rational** ::= Numerator [Denominator].  
**ReadSucceeded** ::= ObjectReference.  
**ReferenceVisible** ::= GenericObjectReference.  
**RunningStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**SelectionStatusVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**SizeVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**SliderValueVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**StartAngle** ::= GenericInteger.  
**StoreSucceeded** ::= ObjectReference.  
**Target** ::= GenericObjectReference.  
**TextContentVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**TextDataVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**TimerID** ::= GenericInteger.  
**TimerValue** ::= GenericInteger.  
**TokenPositionVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**TransitionEffect** ::= GenericInteger.  
**TriggerIdentifier** ::= GenericInteger.  
**Value** ::= GenericInteger.  
**VisibleReference** ::= GenericObjectReference.  
**VolumeVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**X** ::= GenericInteger.  
**X1** ::= GenericInteger.  
**X2** ::= GenericInteger.  
**XBoxSizeVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**XCursor** ::= GenericInteger.  
**XNewBoxSize** ::= GenericInteger.  
**XOut** ::= ObjectReference.  
**XPositionVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**XScale** ::= GenericInteger.

**Y** ::= GenericInteger.  
**Y1** ::= GenericInteger.  
**Y2** ::= GenericInteger.  
**YBoxSizeVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**YCursor** ::= GenericInteger.  
**YNewBoxSize** ::= GenericInteger.  
**YOut** ::= ObjectReference.  
**YPositionVar** ::= ObjectReference.  
**YScale** ::= GenericInteger.

#### B.4.43 Referencing Objects, Contents, Values, Colour and Position

**ObjectReference** ::= ExternalReference | InternalReference.  
**ExternalReference** ::= "(" GroupIdentifier ObjectNumber ")".  
**InternalReference** ::= ObjectNumber.  
**GroupIdentifier** ::= OctetString.  
**ObjectNumber** ::= INTEGER.

**ContentReference** ::= OctetString.

**GenericObjectReference** ::= DirectReference | IndirectReference.  
**DirectReference** ::= ObjectReference.  
**IndirectReference** ::= ":IndirectRef" ObjectReference.

**GenericContentReference** ::= ContentReference | IndirectReference.

**GenericInteger** ::= INTEGER | IndirectReference.

**GenericBoolean** ::= BOOLEAN | IndirectReference.

**GenericOctetString** ::= OctetString | IndirectReference.

**OctetString** ::= STRING | QPRINTABLE | BASE64.

**Colour** ::= ColourIndex | AbsoluteColour.  
**ColourIndex** ::= INTEGER.  
**AbsoluteColour** ::= OctetString.

**XYPosition** ::= XPosition YPosition.  
**XPosition** ::= INTEGER.  
**YPosition** ::= INTEGER.

## APPENDIX I

### Bootstrap of an MHEG-5 engine

An MHEG-5 engine may be in two main states: idle or active. An idle MHEG-5 engine is one in which no Application object is active. Conversely, in an active MHEG-5 engine, exactly one Application object is active. The engine goes from an active to an idle state only by an execution of the Quit action; the semantics of this are explained in clause 10. The engine goes from an idle to an active state either

- 1) as a step in the execution of a Launch or a Spawn action; the semantics of this are explained in clause 10; or
- 2) as a result of the idle MHEG-5 engine being forced from the outside to activate an Application object.

The latter case is the topic of this subclause.

From the outside, an MHEG-5 engine is typically an application that runs on some device in a software environment. When this application is first activated, it shall get information from the outside where the first Application object is to be found. This information may come, for instance, from the user, from memory, or from the network, and should make it possible for the MHEG-5 engine to attach to the name space of the Application object, and to find the Application object itself.

Once the MHEG-5 engine has the information, it attempts to retrieve that Application object and to activate it. The latter is done by implicitly invoking the *Activation* behaviour of the object. In order to also activate a Scene (without which no user input or display is possible), the Application object should have a TransitionTo action encoded in its OnStartUp object; this action then activates the first Scene of the Application.

## APPENDIX II

### Definition of application domains

This appendix specifies the features of this Recommendation that need to be defined by a specific MHEG-5 application domain. The goal of this appendix is to provide a set of tools for creating an instance of an MHEG-5 engine and examples of table values.

#### II.1 Object interchange format

As an example, one specifies here that the application domain chooses the ASN.1 notation defined in Annex A for interchange format.

Interchange format: ASN.1.

#### II.2 Set of classes

The application domain defines a set of mandatory classes such as the following.

Action, Application, Audio, Bitmap, BooleanVariable, ContentRefVariable, EntryField, HotSpot, HyperText, IntegerVariable, InterchangedProgram, Link, ListGroup, ObjectRefVariable, OctetStringVariable, PushButton, Rectangle, RemoteProgram, ResidentProgram, Scene, Slider, Stream, SwitchButton, Text, TokenGroup, Video.

#### II.3 Set of features

The application domain defines a set of mandatory and optional features such as the following example.

Feature	Requirement
Ancillary connections	Mandatory
Caching	Optional
Cloning	Mandatory
Free moving cursor	Optional
Scaling (Video and Bitmap)	Optional
Stacking of Applications	Optional
Trick modes	Optional

## II.4 Content data encoding

This Recommendation is generic in the sense that it does not specify exactly how the content data (e.g. bitmap data) is encoded. However, this Recommendation is also specific in the sense that:

- 1) it specifies which type of content data is supported; and
- 2) it provides a method for defining – for a specific application domain – a list of the actual encoding used in that domain.

The following table exemplifies how an application domain could specify the formats needed; the values listed below are purely provided as an example of values an application domain could choose.

### Content table

Attribute	Permissible values
FontAttributes	Bold, italic, emphasis, strong emphasis
FontName	(None specified)
AbsoluteColour	RGB16, that is, coding of graphics in 16 bits per pixel, allocating 5 bits to the Red and Blue components and 6 bits to the Green component
CharacterSet	1 – Referring to the subset of ISO/IEC 8859-1 as specified in HTML 2.0
TransitionEffect	(None specified)

### Encoding table

Type of content	Specification (Data types)	Hook values
Font encoding format	(None specified)	
Palette encoding format	(None specified)	
Bitmap encoding format	2D graphics defined in DAVIC 1.0	1
	MPEG-2 Video I-frames (ISO/IEC 13818-2)	2
Text encoding format	The subset of ISO/IEC 8859-1 as specified in HTML 2.0	1
EntryField encoding format	The subset of ISO/IEC 8859-1 as specified in HTML 2.0	1
HyperText encoding format	The subset of ISO/IEC 8859-1 as specified in HTML 2.0	1
Stream encoding format	MPEG-2 Systems specified in ISO/IEC 13818-1	1
	MPEG-1 Audio specified in ISO/IEC 11172-3	
	AIFF-C	2
	Real time streams defined in DAVIC 1.0	
		3
		4
LineArt encoding format	(None specified)	
CursorShape encoding format	(None specified)	
InterchangedProgram encoding format	MHEG-6	1

## II.5 UserInput registers

In order to have a working instantiation standard, the application domain should specify one or more InputEventRegisters. Each register has a number, which is exchanged as one of the parameters of a Scene object. The content of an InputEventRegister (which is not exchanged) is a set of numbers (representing UserInputEventTags) and a name. It is recommended that the names have as much semantic content as possible («Up» is a good name; «13» is a bad name). The name/number pairs bind a specific UserInputEventTag to a logical input event. It is the task of the engine implementer to bind the logical input event to one or more physical input events.

The following table is an example of a set of InputEventRegisters:

Register #	UserInputEventTag	Name	Comment
1	1	Up	
	2	Down	
	3	Left	
	4	Right	
	5-14	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, respectively	
	15	Select	
	16	Exit	
	17	Help	
	18-99	Reserved for future specification	
	100-	Vendor specific	

## II.6 Semantic constraints on the MHEG-5 applications

An MHEG-5 application domain may constrain its applications in certain dimensions. The following table contains a list of features of this Recommendation that are optional or may be supported to a higher or lesser degree. For each of these points, an MHEG-5 application domain must make a decision, as outlined in the right-hand column.

The following table is an example of such decisions.

Feature	Constraint
FreeMovingCursor	Optional
ApplicationStacking	Optional
Scaling	Optional
SceneCoordinateSystem(X,Y)	The following coordinate systems are supported: 720 × 576, 704 × 576, 640 × 576, 544 × 576, 540 × 576, 480 × 576, 352 × 576, 352 × 288, 720 × 480, 704 × 480, 640 × 480, 544 × 480, 480 × 480, 352 × 480 and 352 × 240.
SceneAspectRatio(W,H)	The following aspect ratios are supported: 1/1, 4/3 and 16/9
AncillaryConnections	Optional
TrickModes	Optional
MultipleRTGraphicsStreams(N)	One active RTGraphics at a time
MultipleAudioStreams(N)	One audio stream of type <i>stream</i> and one of type <i>memory</i> at a time
MultipleVideoStreams(N)	One video stream playing at a time
OverlappingVisibles(N)	No constraint
Cloning	Mandatory

## II.7 EngineEvent

This application domain reserves no particular value of EngineEvent. This is left to the application developer.

## II.8 GetEngineSupport

Permissible strings to submit in the GetEngineSupport action are the ones defined in this Recommendation. In addition to these strings, a given application domain may define others; in which case, the application domain should define them precisely in a table similar to the one above. This example does not define any additional string.

## II.9 Protocol mapping and external interaction

The following table provides examples to define mapping to external environment.

MHEG-5 entity	Mapping needed	Semantics of these MHEG-5 structures needs specification
OpenConnection, CloseConnection	Mapping to connection management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In OpenConnection:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Protocol: one of the two strings: "PSTN" or "ISDN"</li> <li>– Address: E.164 NSAP</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
RemoteProgram objects	Mapping to RemoteProgram call protocol in the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Call and Fork:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Name</li> <li>– Parameters</li> <li>– ProgramConnectionTag</li> </ul> </li> </ul> Shall be consistent with DSM-CC
Application name space	Mapping to name space of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ObjectReference</li> <li>• ContentReference</li> </ul> Shall be consistent with DSM-CC
Application name space in case a TransitionTo action uses the ConnectionTag parameter	Mapping to the name space of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ObjectReference</li> <li>• ContentReference</li> </ul> Shall be consistent with DSM-CC
Persistent storage name space	Mapping to the name space of the persistent storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In StorePersistent and ReadPersistent:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– InFileName, OutFileName</li> </ul> </li> </ul> Shall be consistent with DSM-CC

<b>MHEG-5 entity</b>	<b>Mapping needed</b>	<b>Semantics of these MHEG-5 structures needs specification</b>
Stream actions	Mapping to the stream interface of the application domain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Stream               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Speed</li> <li>– CounterPosition</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Stream events	Mapping to stream states and stream events in the application domain.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Stream               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– StreamPlaying, StreamStopped (mapping to application-domain stream state machine)</li> <li>– CounterPosition</li> <li>– StreamEventTag</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



## ITU-T RECOMMENDATIONS SERIES

Series A	Organization of the work of the ITU-T
Series B	Means of expression: definitions, symbols, classification
Series C	General telecommunication statistics
Series D	General tariff principles
Series E	Overall network operation, telephone service, service operation and human factors
Series F	Non-telephone telecommunication services
Series G	Transmission systems and media, digital systems and networks
Series H	Audiovisual and multimedia systems
Series I	Integrated services digital network
Series J	Transmission of television, sound programme and other multimedia signals
Series K	Protection against interference
Series L	Construction, installation and protection of cables and other elements of outside plant
Series M	TMN and network maintenance: international transmission systems, telephone circuits, telegraphy, facsimile and leased circuits
Series N	Maintenance: international sound programme and television transmission circuits
Series O	Specifications of measuring equipment
Series P	Telephone transmission quality, telephone installations, local line networks
Series Q	Switching and signalling
Series R	Telegraph transmission
Series S	Telegraph services terminal equipment
<b>Series T</b>	<b>Terminals for telematic services</b>
Series U	Telegraph switching
Series V	Data communication over the telephone network
Series X	Data networks and open system communications
Series Y	Global information infrastructure
Series Z	Programming languages